



## **Cisco Nexus 3600 NX-OS System Management Configuration Guide, Release 10.1(x)**

**First Published:** 2021-02-16

**Last Modified:** 2021-05-14

### **Americas Headquarters**

Cisco Systems, Inc.  
170 West Tasman Drive  
San Jose, CA 95134-1706  
USA  
<http://www.cisco.com>  
Tel: 408 526-4000  
800 553-NETS (6387)  
Fax: 408 527-0883

THE SPECIFICATIONS AND INFORMATION REGARDING THE PRODUCTS REFERENCED IN THIS DOCUMENTATION ARE SUBJECT TO CHANGE WITHOUT NOTICE. EXCEPT AS MAY OTHERWISE BE AGREED BY CISCO IN WRITING, ALL STATEMENTS, INFORMATION, AND RECOMMENDATIONS IN THIS DOCUMENTATION ARE PRESENTED WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED.

The Cisco End User License Agreement and any supplemental license terms govern your use of any Cisco software, including this product documentation, and are located at: <http://www.cisco.com/go/softwareterms>. Cisco product warranty information is available at <http://www.cisco.com/go/warranty>. US Federal Communications Commission Notices are found here <http://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/products/us-fcc-notice.html>.

IN NO EVENT SHALL CISCO OR ITS SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, LOST PROFITS OR LOSS OR DAMAGE TO DATA ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THIS MANUAL, EVEN IF CISCO OR ITS SUPPLIERS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

Any products and features described herein as in development or available at a future date remain in varying stages of development and will be offered on a when-and if-available basis. Any such product or feature roadmaps are subject to change at the sole discretion of Cisco and Cisco will have no liability for delay in the delivery or failure to deliver any products or feature roadmap items that may be set forth in this document.

Any Internet Protocol (IP) addresses and phone numbers used in this document are not intended to be actual addresses and phone numbers. Any examples, command display output, network topology diagrams, and other figures included in the document are shown for illustrative purposes only. Any use of actual IP addresses or phone numbers in illustrative content is unintentional and coincidental.

The documentation set for this product strives to use bias-free language. For the purposes of this documentation set, bias-free is defined as language that does not imply discrimination based on age, disability, gender, racial identity, ethnic identity, sexual orientation, socioeconomic status, and intersectionality. Exceptions may be present in the documentation due to language that is hardcoded in the user interfaces of the product software, language used based on RFP documentation, or language that is used by a referenced third-party product.

Cisco and the Cisco logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Cisco and/or its affiliates in the U.S. and other countries. To view a list of Cisco trademarks, go to this URL: [www.cisco.com go trademarks](http://www.cisco.com/go/trademarks). Third-party trademarks mentioned are the property of their respective owners. The use of the word partner does not imply a partnership relationship between Cisco and any other company. (1721R)

© 2021–2022 Cisco Systems, Inc. All rights reserved.



## CONTENTS

### Trademarks ?

---

#### PREFACE

<b>Preface</b>	<b>xiii</b>
Audience	<b>xiii</b>
Document Conventions	<b>xiii</b>
Related Documentation for Cisco Nexus 3600 Platform Switches	<b>xiv</b>
Documentation Feedback	<b>xiv</b>
Communications, Services, and Additional Information	<b>xiv</b>

---

#### CHAPTER 1

<b>New and Changed Information</b>	<b>1</b>
New and Changed Information	<b>1</b>

---

#### CHAPTER 2

<b>Overview</b>	<b>3</b>
Licensing Requirements	<b>3</b>
System Management Features	<b>3</b>

---

#### CHAPTER 3

<b>Configuring Switch Profiles</b>	<b>7</b>
About Switch Profiles	<b>7</b>
Switch Profile Configuration Modes	<b>8</b>
Configuration Validation	<b>9</b>
Software Upgrades and Downgrades with Switch Profiles	<b>10</b>
Prerequisites for Switch Profiles	<b>10</b>
Guidelines and Limitations for Switch Profiles	<b>10</b>
Configuring Switch Profiles	<b>11</b>
Adding a Switch to a Switch Profile	<b>13</b>
Adding or Modifying Switch Profile Commands	<b>15</b>

- Importing a Switch Profile 17
- Verifying Commands in a Switch Profile 19
- Isolating a Peer Switch 20
- Deleting a Switch Profile 21
- Deleting a Switch from a Switch Profile 22
- Displaying the Switch Profile Buffer 23
- Synchronizing Configurations After a Switch Reboot 24
- Switch Profile Configuration show Commands 24
- Supported Switch Profile Commands 25
- Configuration Examples for Switch Profiles 26
  - Creating a Switch Profile on a Local and Peer Switch Example 26
  - Verifying the Synchronization Status Example 27
  - Displaying the Running Configuration 28
  - Displaying the Switch Profile Synchronization Between Local and Peer Switches 28
  - Displaying Verify and Commit on Local and Peer Switches 29
  - Successful and Unsuccessful Synchronization Examples 30
  - Configuring the Switch Profile Buffer, Moving the Buffer, and Deleting the Buffer 30

---

**CHAPTER 4**

- Configuring PTP 33**
  - About PTP 33
  - PTP Device Types 33
  - PTP Process 34
  - High Availability for PTP 35
  - Guidelines and Limitations for PTP 35
  - Default Settings for PTP 35
  - Configuring PTP 36
    - Configuring PTP Globally 36
    - Configuring PTP on an Interface 38
    - Verifying the PTP Configuration 40

---

**CHAPTER 5**

- Configuring NTP 41**
  - Information About NTP 41
  - NTP as Time Server 42
  - Distributing NTP Using CFS 42

Clock Manager	42
High Availability	42
Virtualization Support	42
Prerequisites for NTP	43
Guidelines and Limitations for NTP	43
Default Settings	44
Configuring NTP	44
Enabling or Disabling NTP on an Interface	44
Configuring the Device as an Authoritative NTP Server	45
Configuring an NTP Server and Peer	46
Configuring NTP Authentication	47
Configuring NTP Access Restrictions	49
Configuring the NTP Source IP Address	50
Configuring the NTP Source Interface	51
Configuring an NTP Broadcast Server	52
Configuring an NTP Multicast Server	53
Configuring an NTP Multicast Client	54
Configuring NTP Logging	54
Enabling CFS Distribution for NTP	55
Committing NTP Configuration Changes	56
Discarding NTP Configuration Changes	56
Releasing the CFS Session Lock	57
Verifying the NTP Configuration	57
Configuration Examples for NTP	58

---

**CHAPTER 6**

<b>Configuring Session Manager</b>	<b>61</b>
About Session Manager	61
Guidelines and Limitations for Session Manager	61
Configuring Session Manager	62
Creating a Session	62
Configuring ACLs in a Session	62
Verifying a Session	63
Committing a Session	63
Saving a Session	63

Discarding a Session	63
Configuration Example for Session Manager	63
Verifying the Session Manager Configuration	64

---

**CHAPTER 7****Configuring the Scheduler 65**

Information About the Scheduler	65
Remote User Authentication	66
Scheduler Log Files	66
Guidelines and Limitations for the Scheduler	66
Default Settings for the Scheduler	66
Configuring the Scheduler	67
Enabling the Scheduler	67
Defining the Scheduler Log File Size	67
Configuring Remote User Authentication	68
Defining a Job	69
Deleting a Job	70
Defining a Timetable	71
Clearing the Scheduler Log File	73
Disabling the Scheduler	73
Verifying the Scheduler Configuration	74
Configuration Examples for the Scheduler	74
Creating a Scheduler Job	74
Scheduling a Scheduler Job	74
Displaying the Job Schedule	75
Displaying the Results of Running Scheduler Jobs	75
Standards for the Scheduler	75

---

**CHAPTER 8****Configuring SNMP 77**

About SNMP	77
SNMP Functional Overview	77
SNMP Notifications	78
SNMPv3	78
Security Models and Levels for SNMPv1, v2, and v3	78
User-Based Security Model	79

CLI and SNMP User Synchronization	80
Group-Based SNMP Access	81
Guidelines and Limitations for SNMP	81
Default SNMP Settings	81
Configuring SNMP	81
Configuring the SNMP Source Interface	81
Configuring SNMP Users	82
Enforcing SNMP Message Encryption	83
Assigning SNMPv3 Users to Multiple Roles	84
Creating SNMP Communities	84
Filtering SNMP Requests	84
Configuring SNMP Notification Receivers	85
Configuring SNMP Notification Receivers with VRFs	86
Filtering SNMP Notifications Based on a VRF	87
Configuring SNMP for Inband Access	87
Enabling SNMP Notifications	89
Configuring Link Notifications	91
Disabling Link Notifications on an Interface	91
Enabling One-Time Authentication for SNMP over TCP	92
Assigning SNMP Switch Contact and Location Information	92
Configuring the Context to Network Entity Mapping	93
Configuring the SNMP Local Engine ID	93
Disabling SNMP	94
Verifying the SNMP Configuration	95

---

<b>CHAPTER 9</b>	<b>Using the PCAP SNMP Parser</b>	<b>97</b>
	Using the PCAP SNMP Parser	97

---

<b>CHAPTER 10</b>	<b>Configuring RMON</b>	<b>99</b>
	Information About RMON	99
	RMON Alarms	99
	RMON Events	100
	Configuration Guidelines and Limitations for RMON	100
	Verifying the RMON Configuration	100

Default RMON Settings	101
Configuring RMON Alarms	101
Configuring RMON Events	102

---

**CHAPTER 11****Configuring Online Diagnostics 105**

Information About Online Diagnostics	105
Bootup Diagnostics	105
Health Monitoring Diagnostics	106
Expansion Module Diagnostics	106
Guidelines and Limitations for Online Diagnostics	107
Configuring Online Diagnostics	107
Verifying the Online Diagnostics Configuration	108
Default Settings for Online Diagnostics	108

---

**CHAPTER 12****Configuring the Embedded Event Manager 109**

About Embedded Event Manager	109
Embedded Event Manager Policies	109
Event Statements	110
Action Statements	111
VSH Script Policies	112
Licensing Requirements for Embedded Event Manager	112
Prerequisites for Embedded Event Manager	112
Guidelines and Limitations for Embedded Event Manager	112
Default Settings for Embedded Event Manager	113
Configuring Embedded Event Manager	113
Defining an Environment Variable	113
Defining a User Policy Using the CLI	114
Configuring Event Statements	115
Configuring Action Statements	118
Defining a Policy Using a VSH Script	120
Registering and Activating a VSH Script Policy	120
Overriding a System Policy	121
Configuring Syslog as an EEM Publisher	123
Verifying the Embedded Event Manager Configuration	124



Event Log Auto-Collection and Backup	124
Extended Log File Retention	125
Trigger-Based Event Log Auto-Collection	129
Local Log File Storage	137
External Log File Storage	139
Verifying the Embedded Event Manager Configuration	140
Configuration Examples for Embedded Event Manager	141
Additional References	142

---

<b>CHAPTER 13</b>	<b>Configuring Onboard Failure Logging</b>	<b>143</b>
	About OBFL	143
	Prerequisites for OBFL	144
	Guidelines and Limitations for OBFL	144
	Default Settings for OBFL	144
	Configuring OBFL	144
	Verifying the OBFL Configuration	147
	Configuration Example for OBFL	148
	Additional References	148
	Related Documents	148

---

<b>CHAPTER 14</b>	<b>Configuring SPAN</b>	<b>149</b>
	Information About SPAN	149
	SPAN Sources	149
	Characteristics of Source Ports	150
	SPAN Destinations	150
	Characteristics of Destination Ports	150
	Guidelines and Limitations for SPAN	151
	Creating or Deleting a SPAN Session	152
	Configuring an Ethernet Destination Port	152
	Configuring Source Ports	153
	Configuring the Rate Limit for SPAN Traffic	154
	Configuring Source Port Channels or VLANs	155
	Configuring the Description of a SPAN Session	156
	Activating a SPAN Session	157

Suspending a SPAN Session	157
Displaying SPAN Information	158
Configuration Examples for SPAN	159
Configuration Example for a SPAN Session	159
Configuration Example for a Unidirectional SPAN Session	159
Configuration Example for a SPAN ACL	160
Configuration Examples for UDF-Based SPAN	161

**CHAPTER 15****Configuring ERSPAN 163**

About ERSPAN	163
ERSPAN Sources	163
Multiple ERSPAN Sessions	164
High Availability	164
Prerequisites for ERSPAN	164
Guidelines and Limitations for ERSPAN	164
Default Settings for ERSPAN	167
Configuring ERSPAN	167
Configuring an ERSPAN Source Session	167
Configuring SPAN Forward Drop Traffic for ERSPAN Source Session	170
Configuring an ERSPAN ACL	172
Configuring User Defined Field (UDF) Based ACL Support	173
Configuring IPv6 User Defined Field (UDF) on ERSPAN	175
Shutting Down or Activating an ERSPAN Session	178
Verifying the ERSPAN Configuration	180
Configuration Examples for ERSPAN	180
Configuration Example for an ERSPAN Source Session	180
Configuration Example for an ERSPAN ACL	180
Configuration Examples for UDF-Based ERSPAN	181
Additional References	182
Related Documents	182

**CHAPTER 16****Configuring DNS 183**

About DNS Client	183
Name Servers	183

DNS Operation	183
High Availability	184
Prerequisites for DNS Clients	184
Default Settings for DNS Clients	184
Configuring the DNS Source Interface	184
Configuring DNS Clients	185

---

**CHAPTER 17**

<b>Configuring sFlow</b>	<b>189</b>
About sFlow	189
sFlow Agent	189
Prerequisites	190
Guidelines and Limitations for sFlow	190
Default Settings for sFlow	190
Minimum Requirements for Sampling	190
Configuring sFlow	191
Enabling the sFlow Feature	191
Configuring the Sampling Rate	191
Configuring the Maximum Sampled Size	192
Configuring the Counter Poll Interval	193
Configuring the Maximum Datagram Size	194
Configuring the sFlow Analyzer Address	195
Configuring the sFlow Analyzer Port	195
Configuring the sFlow Agent Address	196
Configuring the sFlow Sampling Data Source	197
Verifying the sFlow Configuration	198
Configuration Examples for sFlow	198
Additional References for sFlow	199

---

**CHAPTER 18**

<b>Configuring Graceful Insertion and Removal</b>	<b>201</b>
About Graceful Insertion and Removal	201
Profiles	202
Snapshots	203
GIR Workflow	203
Configuring the Maintenance-Mode Profile	204

Configuring the Normal-Mode Profile	205
Creating a Snapshot	206
Adding Show Commands to Snapshots	208
Triggering Graceful Removal	209
Triggering Graceful Insertion	212
Maintenance Mode Enhancements	213
Verifying the GIR Configuration	214

---

**CHAPTER 19**

<b>Configuring Rollback</b>	<b>217</b>
About Rollbacks	217
Guidelines and Limitations for Rollbacks	217
Creating a Checkpoint	218
Implementing a Rollback	219
Verifying the Rollback Configuration	220

---

**CHAPTER 20**

<b>Configuring User Accounts and RBAC</b>	<b>221</b>
About User Accounts and RBAC	221
User Roles	221
Rules	222
User Role Policies	222
User Account Configuration Restrictions	222
User Password Requirements	223
Guidelines and Limitations for User Accounts	224
Configuring User Accounts	225
Configuring RBAC	226
Creating User Roles and Rules	226
Creating Feature Groups	228
Changing User Role Interface Policies	228
Changing User Role VLAN Policies	229
Verifying the User Accounts and RBAC Configuration	230
Default Settings for the User Accounts and RBAC	230



## Preface

---

This preface includes the following sections:

- [Audience, on page xiii](#)
- [Document Conventions, on page xiii](#)
- [Related Documentation for Cisco Nexus 3600 Platform Switches, on page xiv](#)
- [Documentation Feedback, on page xiv](#)
- [Communications, Services, and Additional Information, on page xiv](#)

## Audience

This publication is for network administrators who install, configure, and maintain Cisco Nexus switches.

## Document Conventions

Command descriptions use the following conventions:

Convention	Description
<b>bold</b>	Bold text indicates the commands and keywords that you enter literally as shown.
<i>Italic</i>	Italic text indicates arguments for which the user supplies the values.
[x]	Square brackets enclose an optional element (keyword or argument).
[x   y]	Square brackets enclosing keywords or arguments separated by a vertical bar indicate an optional choice.
{x   y}	Braces enclosing keywords or arguments separated by a vertical bar indicate a required choice.
[x {y   z}]	Nested set of square brackets or braces indicate optional or required choices within optional or required elements. Braces and a vertical bar within square brackets indicate a required choice within an optional element.

Convention	Description
<i>variable</i>	Indicates a variable for which you supply values, in context where italics cannot be used.
string	A nonquoted set of characters. Do not use quotation marks around the string or the string will include the quotation marks.

Examples use the following conventions:

Convention	Description
<code>screen font</code>	Terminal sessions and information the switch displays are in screen font.
<b>boldface screen font</b>	Information you must enter is in boldface screen font.
<i>italic screen font</i>	Arguments for which you supply values are in italic screen font.
<>	Nonprinting characters, such as passwords, are in angle brackets.
[ ]	Default responses to system prompts are in square brackets.
!, #	An exclamation point (!) or a pound sign (#) at the beginning of a line of code indicates a comment line.

## Related Documentation for Cisco Nexus 3600 Platform Switches

The entire Cisco Nexus 3600 platform switch documentation set is available at the following URL:

<http://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/support/switches/nexus-3000-series-switches/tsd-products-support-series-home.html>

## Documentation Feedback

To provide technical feedback on this document, or to report an error or omission, please send your comments to [nexus3k-docfeedback@cisco.com](mailto:nexus3k-docfeedback@cisco.com). We appreciate your feedback.

## Communications, Services, and Additional Information

- To receive timely, relevant information from Cisco, sign up at [Cisco Profile Manager](#).
- To get the business impact you're looking for with the technologies that matter, visit [Cisco Services](#).
- To submit a service request, visit [Cisco Support](#).
- To discover and browse secure, validated enterprise-class apps, products, solutions and services, visit [Cisco Marketplace](#).
- To obtain general networking, training, and certification titles, visit [Cisco Press](#).
- To find warranty information for a specific product or product family, access [Cisco Warranty Finder](#).

### **Cisco Bug Search Tool**

[Cisco Bug Search Tool](#) (BST) is a web-based tool that acts as a gateway to the Cisco bug tracking system that maintains a comprehensive list of defects and vulnerabilities in Cisco products and software. BST provides you with detailed defect information about your products and software.







## CHAPTER

# 1

## New and Changed Information

---

- [New and Changed Information](#), on page 1

## New and Changed Information

This table summarizes the new and changed features for the *Cisco Nexus 3600 Series NX-OS System Management Configuration Guide, Release 10.1(x)* and tells you where they are documented.

**Table 1: New and Changed Features for Cisco NX-OS Release 10.1(x)**

Feature	Description	Changed in Release	Where Documented
Flash MIB SNMP Walk	Support for up to 10000 flash files.	10.1(1)	<a href="#">Guidelines and Limitations for SNMP</a> , on page 81
Event Log Auto-Collection and Backup	Support for <i>test_folder</i> and modifications to the LC core file.	10.1(1)	<a href="#">Configuring the Auto-Collection YAML File</a> , on page 130





## CHAPTER 2

# Overview

---

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [Licensing Requirements, on page 3](#)
- [System Management Features, on page 3](#)

## Licensing Requirements

For a complete explanation of Cisco NX-OS licensing recommendations and how to obtain and apply licenses, see the [Cisco NX-OS Licensing Guide](#).

## System Management Features

The system management features documented in this guide are described below:

Feature	Description
User Accounts and RBAC	User accounts and role-based access control (RBAC) allow you to define the rules for an assigned role. Roles restrict the authorization that the user has to access management operations. Each user role can contain multiple rules and each user can have multiple roles.
Session Manager	Session Manager allows you to create a configuration and apply it in batch mode after the configuration is reviewed and verified for accuracy and completeness.

Feature	Description
Online Diagnostics	<p>Cisco Generic Online Diagnostics (GOLD) define a common framework for diagnostic operations across Cisco platforms. The online diagnostic framework specifies the platform-independent fault-detection architecture for centralized and distributed systems, including the common diagnostics CLI and the platform-independent fault-detection procedures for boot-up and run-time diagnostics.</p> <p>The platform-specific diagnostics provide hardware-specific fault-detection tests and allow you to take appropriate corrective action in response to diagnostic test results.</p>
Configuration Rollback	<p>The configuration rollback feature allows users to take a snapshot, or user checkpoint, of the Cisco NX-OS configuration and then reapply that configuration to a switch at any point without having to reload the switch. A rollback allows any authorized administrator to apply this checkpoint configuration without requiring expert knowledge of the features configured in the checkpoint.</p>
SNMP	<p>The Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) is an application-layer protocol that provides a message format for communication between SNMP managers and agents. SNMP provides a standardized framework and a common language used for the monitoring and management of devices in a network.</p>
RMON	<p>RMON is an Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) standard monitoring specification that allows various network agents and console systems to exchange network monitoring data. Cisco NX-OS supports RMON alarms, events, and logs to monitor Cisco NX-OS devices.</p>
SPAN	<p>The Switched Port Analyzer (SPAN) feature (sometimes called port mirroring or port monitoring) selects network traffic for analysis by a network analyzer. The network analyzer can be a Cisco SwitchProbe or other Remote Monitoring (RMON) probes.</p>

Feature	Description
ERSPAN	<p>Encapsulated remote switched port analyzer (ERSPAN) is used to transport mirrored traffic in an IP network. ERSPAN supports source ports, source VLANs, and destinations on different switches, which provide remote monitoring of multiple switches across your network. ERSPAN uses a generic routing encapsulation (GRE) tunnel to carry traffic between switches.</p> <p>ERSPAN consists of an ERSPAN source session, routable ERSPAN GRE-encapsulated traffic, and an ERSPAN destination session. You separately configure ERSPAN source sessions and destination sessions on different switches.</p> <p>To configure an ERSPAN source session on one switch, you associate a set of source ports or VLANs with a destination IP address, ERSPAN ID number, and virtual routing and forwarding (VRF) name. To configure an ERSPAN destination session on another switch, you associate the destinations with the source IP address, the ERSPAN ID number, and a VRF name.</p> <p>The ERSPAN source session copies traffic from the source ports or source VLANs and forwards the traffic using routable GRE-encapsulated packets to the ERSPAN destination session. The ERSPAN destination session switches the traffic to the destinations.</p>





## CHAPTER 3

# Configuring Switch Profiles

---

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [About Switch Profiles, on page 7](#)
- [Switch Profile Configuration Modes, on page 8](#)
- [Configuration Validation, on page 9](#)
- [Software Upgrades and Downgrades with Switch Profiles, on page 10](#)
- [Prerequisites for Switch Profiles, on page 10](#)
- [Guidelines and Limitations for Switch Profiles, on page 10](#)
- [Configuring Switch Profiles, on page 11](#)
- [Adding a Switch to a Switch Profile, on page 13](#)
- [Adding or Modifying Switch Profile Commands, on page 15](#)
- [Importing a Switch Profile, on page 17](#)
- [Verifying Commands in a Switch Profile, on page 19](#)
- [Isolating a Peer Switch, on page 20](#)
- [Deleting a Switch Profile, on page 21](#)
- [Deleting a Switch from a Switch Profile, on page 22](#)
- [Displaying the Switch Profile Buffer, on page 23](#)
- [Synchronizing Configurations After a Switch Reboot, on page 24](#)
- [Switch Profile Configuration show Commands, on page 24](#)
- [Supported Switch Profile Commands, on page 25](#)
- [Configuration Examples for Switch Profiles, on page 26](#)

## About Switch Profiles

Several applications require consistent configuration across Cisco Nexus Series switches. For example, with a Virtual Port Channel (vPC), you must have identical configurations. Mismatched configurations can cause errors or misconfigurations that can result in service disruptions.

The configuration synchronization (config-sync) feature allows you to configure one switch profile and have the configuration be automatically synchronized to the peer switch. A switch profile provides the following benefits:

- Allows configurations to be synchronized between switches.
- Merges configurations when connectivity is established between two switches.

- Provides control of exactly which configuration gets synchronized.
- Ensures configuration consistency across peers through merge and mutual-exclusion checks.
- Provides verify and commit semantics.
- Supports configuring and synchronizing port profile configurations.
- Provides an import command to migrate existing vPC configurations to a switch profile.

## Switch Profile Configuration Modes

The switch profile feature includes the following configuration modes:

- Configuration Synchronization Mode
- Switch Profile Mode
- Switch Profile Import Mode

### Configuration Synchronization Mode

The configuration synchronization mode (config-sync) allows you to create switch profiles using the **config sync** command on the local switch that you want to use as the primary. After you create the profile, you can enter the **config sync** command on the peer switch that you want to synchronize.

### Switch Profile Mode

The switch profile mode allows you to add supported configuration commands to a switch profile that is later synchronized with a peer switch. Commands that you enter in the switch profile mode are buffered until you enter the **commit** command.

### Switch Profile Import Mode

When you upgrade from an earlier release, you have the option to enter the **import** command to copy supported running-configuration commands to a switch profile. After entering the **import** command, the switch profile mode (config-sync-sp) changes to the switch profile import mode (config-sync-sp-import). The switch profile import mode allows you to import existing switch configurations from the running configuration and specify which commands you want to include in the switch profile.

Because different topologies require different commands that are included in a switch profile, the **import** command mode allows you to modify the imported set of commands to suit a specific topology.

You need to enter the **commit** command to complete the import process and move the configuration into the switch profile. Because configuration changes are not supported during the import process, if you added new commands before entering the **commit** command, the switch profile remains unsaved and the switch remains in the switch profile import mode. You can remove the added commands or abort the import. Unsaved configurations are lost if the process is aborted. You can add new commands to the switch profile after the import is complete.



# Configuration Validation

Two types of configuration validation checks can identify two types of switch profile failures:

- Mutual Exclusion Checks
- Merge Checks

## Mutual Exclusion Checks

To reduce the possibility of overriding configuration settings that are included in a switch profile, mutual exclusion (mutex) checks the switch profile commands against the commands that exist on the local switch and the commands on the peer switch. A command that is included in a switch profile cannot be configured outside of the switch profile or on a peer switch. This requirement reduces the possibility that an existing command is unintentionally overwritten.

As a part of the commit process, the mutex-check occurs on both switches if the peer switch is reachable; otherwise, the mutex-check is performed locally. Configuration changes made from the configuration terminal occur only on the local switch.

If a mutex-check identifies errors, they are reported as mutex failures and they must be manually corrected.

The following exceptions apply to the mutual exclusion policy:

- Interface configuration—Port channel interfaces must be configured fully in either switch profile mode or global configuration mode.



---

**Note** Several port channel subcommands are not configurable in switch profile mode. These commands can be configured from global configuration mode even if the port channel is created and configured in switch profile mode.

For example, the following command can only be configured in global configuration mode:

```
switchport private-vlan association trunk primary-vlan  
secondary-vlan
```

---

- Shutdown/no shutdown
- System QoS

## Merge Checks

Merge checks are done on the peer switch that is receiving a configuration. The merge checks ensure that the received configuration does not conflict with the switch profile configuration that already exists on the receiving switch. The merge check occurs during the merge or commit process. Errors are reported as merge failures and must be manually corrected.

When one or both switches are reloaded and the configurations are synchronized for the first time, the merge check verifies that the switch profile configurations are identical on both switches. Differences in the switch profiles are reported as merge errors and must be manually corrected.

# Software Upgrades and Downgrades with Switch Profiles

When you downgrade to an earlier release, you are prompted to remove an existing switch profile that is not supported on earlier releases.

When you upgrade from an earlier release, you have the option to move some of the running-configuration commands to a switch profile. The **import** command allows you to import relevant switch profile commands. An upgrade can occur if there are buffered configurations (uncommitted); however, the uncommitted configurations are lost.

## Prerequisites for Switch Profiles

Switch profiles have the following prerequisites:

- You must enable Cisco Fabric Series over IP (CFS over IP) distribution over mgmt0 on both switches by entering the **cfs ipv4 distribute** command.
- You must configure a switch profile with the same name on both peer switches by entering the **config sync** and **switch-profile** commands.
- Configure each switch as peer switch by entering the **sync-peers destination** command

## Guidelines and Limitations for Switch Profiles

Consider the following guidelines and limitations when configuring switch profiles:

- You can only enable configuration synchronization using the mgmt0 interface.
- Configuration synchronization is performed using the mgmt 0 interface and cannot be performed using a management SVI.
- You must configure synchronized peers with the same switch profile name.
- Commands that are qualified for a switch profile configuration are allowed to be configured in the configuration switch profile (config-sync-sp) mode.
- One switch profile session can be in progress at a time. Attempts to start another session will fail.
- Supported command changes made from the configuration terminal mode are blocked when a switch profile session is in progress. You should not make unsupported command changes from the configuration terminal mode when a switch profile session is in progress.
- When you enter the **commit** command and a peer switch is reachable, the configuration is applied to both peer switches or neither switch. If there is a commit failure, the commands remain in the switch profile buffer. You can then make necessary corrections and try the commit again.
- Once a port channel is configured using switch profile mode, it cannot be configured using global configuration (config terminal) mode.



**Note** Several port channel sub-commands are not configurable in switch profile mode. These commands can be configured from global configuration mode even if the port channel is created and configured in switch profile mode.

For example, the following command can only be configured in global configuration mode:

```
switchport private-vlan association trunk primary-vlan  
secondary-vlan
```

- Shutdown and no shutdown can be configured in either global configuration mode or switch profile mode.
- If a port channel is created in global configuration mode, channel groups including member interfaces must also be created using global configuration mode.
- Port channels that are configured within switch profile mode may have members both inside and outside of a switch profile.
- If you want to import a member interface to a switch profile, the port channel including the member interface must also be present within the switch profile.
- Defaulting an interface does not remove a channel group from the config-sync configuration for that interface. You must apply the **no channel-group** command on the interface or include the port channel in the config-sync configuration to prevent any conflicting configurations from being pushed by the config-sync module.

#### Guidelines for Synchronizing After Connectivity Loss

- Synchronizing configurations after mgmt0 interface connectivity loss—When mgmt0 interface connectivity is lost and configuration changes are required, apply the configuration changes on both switches using the switch profile. When connectivity to the mgmt0 interface is restored, both switches synchronize automatically.

If a configuration change is made on only one switch, a merge will occur when the mgmt0 interface comes up and the configuration is applied on the other switch.

## Configuring Switch Profiles

You can create and configure a switch profile. Enter the **switch-profile** *name* command in the configuration synchronization mode (config-sync).

#### Before you begin

You must create the switch profile with the same name on each switch and the switches must configure each other as a peer. When connectivity is established between switches with the same active switch profile, the switch profiles are synchronized.

## SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **cfs ipv4 distribute**
3. **config sync**
4. **switch-profile** *name*
5. **sync-peers destination** *IP-address*
6. (Optional) **show switch-profile** *name* **status**
7. **exit**
8. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch# configure terminal switch(config)#</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>cfs ipv4 distribute</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config)# cfs ipv4 distribute switch(config)#</pre>	Enables CFS distribution between the peer switches.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>config sync</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch# config sync switch(config-sync)#</pre>	Enters configuration synchronization mode.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>switch-profile</b> <i>name</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-sync)# switch-profile abc switch(config-sync-sp)#</pre>	Configures the switch profile, names the switch profile, and enters switch profile synchronization configuration mode.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>sync-peers destination</b> <i>IP-address</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-sync-sp)# sync-peers destination 10.1.1.1 switch(config-sync-sp)#</pre>	Configures the peer switch.
<b>Step 6</b>	(Optional) <b>show switch-profile</b> <i>name</i> <b>status</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-sync-sp)# show switch-profile abc status switch(config-sync-sp)#</pre>	Views the switch profile on the local switch and the peer switch information.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>exit</b> <b>Example:</b>	Exits the switch profile configuration mode and returns to EXEC mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	switch(config-sync-sp)# exit switch#	
<b>Step 8</b>	(Optional) <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>  <b>Example:</b> switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

The following example shows how to configure a switch profile and shows the switch profile status.

```
switch# configuration terminal
switch(config)# cfs ipv4 distribute
switch(config-sync)# switch-profile abc
switch(config-sync-sp)# sync-peers destination 10.1.1.1
switch(config-sync-sp)# show switch-profile abc status
Start-time: 15801 usecs after Mon Aug 23 06:21:08 2010
End-time: 6480 usecs after Mon Aug 23 06:21:13 2010

Profile-Revision: 1
Session-type: Initial-Exchange
Peer-triggered: Yes
Profile-status: Sync Success

Local information:
-----
Status: Commit Success
Error(s):

Peer information:
-----
IP-address: 10.1.1.1
Sync-status: In Sync.
Status: Commit Success
Error(s):
switch(config-sync-sp)# exit
switch#
```

## Adding a Switch to a Switch Profile

Enter the **sync-peers destination** *destination IP* command in switch profile configuration mode to add the switch to a switch profile.

Follow these guidelines when adding switches:

- Switches are identified by their IP address.
- Destination IPs are the IP addresses of the switches that you want to synchronize.
- The committed switch profile is synchronized with the newly added peers (when they are online) if the peer switch is also configured with configuration synchronization.

If you want to import a member interface to a switch profile, the port channel including the member interface must also be present within the switch profile.

**Before you begin**

After creating a switch profile on the local switch, you must add the second switch that will be included in the synchronization.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. **config sync**
2. **switch-profile** *name*
3. **sync-peers destination** *destination IP*
4. **exit**
5. (Optional) **show switch-profile peer**
6. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

**DETAILED STEPS**

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>config sync</b> <b>Example:</b> switch# config sync switch(config-sync)#	Enters configuration synchronization mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>switch-profile</b> <i>name</i> <b>Example:</b> switch(config-sync)# switch-profile abc switch(config-sync-sp)#	Configures switch profile, names the switch profile, and enters switch profile synchronization configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>sync-peers destination</b> <i>destination IP</i> <b>Example:</b> switch(config-sync-sp)# sync-peers destination 10.1.1.1 switch(config-sync-sp)#	Adds a switch to the switch profile.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>exit</b> <b>Example:</b> switch(config-sync-sp)# exit switch#	Exits switch profile configuration mode.
<b>Step 5</b>	(Optional) <b>show switch-profile peer</b> <b>Example:</b> switch# show switch-profile peer	Displays the switch profile peer configuration.
<b>Step 6</b>	(Optional) <b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b> switch# copy running-config startup-config	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

# Adding or Modifying Switch Profile Commands

To modify a command in a switch profile, add the modified command to the switch profile and enter the **commit** command to apply the command and synchronize the switch profile to the peer switch if it is reachable.

Follow these guidelines when adding or modifying switch profile commands:

- Commands that are added or modified are buffered until you enter the **commit** command.
- Commands are executed in the same order in which they are buffered. If there is an order-dependency for certain commands, for example, a QoS policy must be defined before being applied, you must maintain that order; otherwise, the commit might fail. You can use utility commands, such as the **show switch-profile name buffer** command, the **buffer-delete** command, or the **buffer-move** command, to change the buffer and correct the order of already entered commands.

## Before you begin

After configuring a switch profile on the local and the peer switch, you must add and commit the supported commands to the switch profile. The commands are added to the switch profile buffer until you enter the **commit** command. The **commit** command does the following:

- Triggers the mutex check and the merge check to verify the synchronization.
- Creates a checkpoint with a rollback infrastructure.
- Applies the configuration on the local switch and the peer switch.
- Executes a rollback on all switches if there is a failure with an application on any of the switches in the switch profile.
- Deletes the checkpoint.

## SUMMARY STEPS

1. **config sync**
2. **switch-profile name**
3. *Command argument*
4. (Optional) **show switch-profile name buffer**
5. **verify**
6. **commit**
7. (Optional) **show switch-profile name status**
8. **exit**
9. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	<b>config sync</b> Example:	Enters configuration synchronization mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	switch# config sync switch(config-sync)#	
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>switch-profile name</b>  <b>Example:</b> switch(config-sync)# switch-profile abc switch(config-sync-sp)#	Configures the switch profile, names the switch profile, and enters switch profile synchronization configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<i>Command argument</i>  <b>Example:</b> switch(config-sync-sp)# interface Port-channel100 switch(config-sync-sp-if)# speed 1000 switch(config-sync-sp-if)# interface Ethernet1/1 switch(config-sync-sp-if)# speed 1000 switch(config-sync-sp-if)# channel-group 100	Adds a command to the switch profile.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) <b>show switch-profile name buffer</b>  <b>Example:</b> switch(config-sync-sp)# show switch-profile abc buffer switch(config-sync-sp)#	Displays the configuration commands in the switch profile buffer.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>verify</b>  <b>Example:</b> switch(config-sync-sp)# verify	Verifies the commands in the switch profile buffer.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>commit</b>  <b>Example:</b> switch(config-sync-sp)# commit	Saves the commands in the switch profile and synchronizes the configuration with the peer switch.
<b>Step 7</b>	(Optional) <b>show switch-profile name status</b>  <b>Example:</b> switch(config-sync-sp)# show switch-profile abc status switch(config-sync-sp)#	Displays the status of the switch profile on the local switch and the status on the peer switch.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>exit</b>  <b>Example:</b> switch(config-sync-sp)# exit switch#	Exits the switch profile configuration mode.
<b>Step 9</b>	(Optional) <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>  <b>Example:</b> switch# copy running-config startup-config	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.



### Example

The following example shows how to create a switch profile, configure a peer switch, and add commands to the switch profile.

```
switch# configuration terminal
switch(config)# cfs ipv4 distribute
switch(config-sync)# switch-profile abc
switch(config-sync-sp)# sync-peers destination 10.1.1.1
switch(config-sync-sp)# interface port-channel100
switch(config-sync-sp-if)# speed 1000
switch(config-sync-sp-if)# interface Ethernet1/1
switch(config-sync-sp-if)# speed 1000
switch(config-sync-sp-if)# channel-group 100
switch(config-sync-sp)# verify
switch(config-sync-sp)# commit
switch(config-sync-sp)# exit
switch#
```

The following example shows an existing configuration with a defined switch profile. The second example shows how the switch profile command changed by adding the modified command to the switch profile.

```
switch# show running-config
switch-profile abc
  interface Ethernet1/1
    switchport mode trunk
    switchport trunk allowed vlan 1-10

switch# config sync
switch(config-sync)# switch-profile abc
switch(config-sync-sp)# interface Ethernet1/1
switch(config-sync-sp-if)# switchport trunk allowed vlan 5-10
switch(config-sync-sp-if)# commit

switch# show running-config
switch-profile abc
  interface Ethernet1/1
    switchport mode trunk
    switchport trunk allowed vlan 5-10
```

## Importing a Switch Profile

You can import a switch profile based on the set of commands that you want to import. Using the configuration terminal mode, you can do the following:

- Add selected commands to the switch profile.
- Add supported commands that were specified for an interface.
- Add supported system-level commands.
- Add supported system-level commands excluding the physical interface commands.

When you import commands to a switch profile, the switch profile buffer must be empty.

If new commands are added during the import, the switch profile remains unsaved and the switch remains in the switch profile import mode. You can enter the **abort** command to stop the import. For additional information importing a switch profile, see the “Switch Profile Import Mode” section.

## SUMMARY STEPS

1. **config sync**
2. **switch-profile** *name*
3. **import** {*interface port/slot* | *running-config* [**exclude interface ethernet**]}
4. **commit**
5. (Optional) **abort**
6. **exit**
7. (Optional) **show switch-profile**
8. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>config sync</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch# config sync switch(config-sync) #</pre>	Enters configuration synchronization mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>switch-profile</b> <i>name</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-sync) # switch-profile abc switch(config-sync-sp) #</pre>	Configures the switch profile, names the switch profile, and enters switch profile synchronization configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>import</b> { <i>interface port/slot</i>   <i>running-config</i> [ <b>exclude interface ethernet</b> ]} <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-sync-sp) # import ethernet 1/2 switch(config-sync-sp-import) #</pre>	Identifies the commands that you want to import and enters switch profile import mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>&lt;CR&gt;</b>—Adds selected commands.</li> <li>• <b>interface</b>—Adds the supported commands for a specified interface.</li> <li>• <b>running-config</b>—Adds supported system-level commands.</li> <li>• <b>running-config exclude interface ethernet</b>—Adds supported system-level commands excluding the physical interface commands.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>commit</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-sync-sp-import) # commit</pre>	Imports the commands and saves the commands to the switch profile.
<b>Step 5</b>	(Optional) <b>abort</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-sync-sp-import) # abort</pre>	Aborts the import process.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 6	<b>exit</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-sync-sp) # exit switch#</pre>	Exits switch profile import mode.
Step 7	(Optional) <b>show switch-profile</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch# show switch-profile</pre>	Displays the switch profile configuration.
Step 8	(Optional) <b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch# copy running-config startup-config</pre>	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

The following example shows how to import supported system-level commands excluding the Ethernet interface commands into the switch profile named sp:

```
switch(config-vlan)# conf sync
switch(config-sync)# switch-profile sp
Switch-Profile started, Profile ID is 1
switch(config-sync-sp)# show switch-profile buffer

switch-profile : sp
-----
Seq-no  Command
-----

switch(config-sync-sp)# import running-config exclude interface ethernet
switch(config-sync-sp-import)#
switch(config-sync-sp-import)# show switch-profile buffer

switch-profile : sp
-----
Seq-no  Command
-----
3      vlan 100-299
4      vlan 300
4.1    state suspend
5      vlan 301-345
6      interface port-channel100
6.1    spanning-tree port type network
7      interface port-channel105

switch(config-sync-sp-import)#
```

## Verifying Commands in a Switch Profile

You can verify the commands that are included in a switch profile by entering the **verify** command in switch profile mode.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. **config sync**
2. **switch-profile** *name*
3. **verify**
4. **exit**
5. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

**DETAILED STEPS**

	<b>Command or Action</b>	<b>Purpose</b>
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>config sync</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch# config sync switch(config-sync)#</pre>	Enters configuration synchronization mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>switch-profile</b> <i>name</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-sync)# switch-profile abc switch(config-sync-sp)#</pre>	Configures the switch profile, names the switch profile, and enters switch profile synchronization configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>verify</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-sync-sp)# verify</pre>	Verifies the commands in the switch profile buffer.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>exit</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-sync-sp)# exit switch#</pre>	Exits the switch profile configuration mode.
<b>Step 5</b>	(Optional) <b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch# copy running-config startup-config</pre>	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

## Isolating a Peer Switch

You can isolate a peer switch in order to make changes to a switch profile. This process can be used when you want to block a configuration synchronization or when you want to debug configurations.

Isolating a peer switch requires that you remove the switch from the switch profile and then add the peer switch back to the switch profile.

To temporarily isolate a peer switch, follow these steps:

1. Remove a peer switch from a switch profile.
2. Make changes to the switch profile and commit the changes.
3. Enter debug commands.

4. Undo the changes that were made to the switch profile in Step 2 and commit.
5. Add the peer switch back to the switch profile.

## Deleting a Switch Profile

You can delete a switch profile by selecting the **all-config** or the **local-config** option:

- **all-config**—Deletes the switch profile on both peer switches (when both are reachable). If you choose this option and one of the peers is unreachable, only the local switch profile is deleted. The **all-config** option completely deletes the switch profile on both peer switches.
- **local-config**—Deletes the switch profile on the local switch only.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **config sync**
2. **no switch-profile name {all-config | local-config}**
3. **exit**
4. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>config sync</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch# config sync switch(config-sync)#</pre>	Enters configuration synchronization mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>no switch-profile name {all-config   local-config}</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-sync)# no switch-profile abc local-config switch(config-sync-sp)#</pre>	Deletes the switch profile as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>all-config</b>—Deletes the switch profile on the local and peer switch. If the peer switch is not reachable, only the local switch profile is deleted.</li> <li>• <b>local-config</b>—Deletes the switch profile and local configuration.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>exit</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-sync-sp)# exit switch#</pre>	Exits configuration synchronization mode.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) <b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch# copy running-config startup-config</pre>	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

# Deleting a Switch from a Switch Profile

You can delete a switch from a switch profile.

## SUMMARY STEPS

1. **config sync**
2. **switch-profile** *name*
3. **no sync-peers destination** *destination IP*
4. **exit**
5. (Optional) **show switch-profile**
6. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>config sync</b>  <b>Example:</b> switch# config sync switch(config-sync)#	Enters configuration synchronization mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>switch-profile</b> <i>name</i>  <b>Example:</b> switch(config-sync)# switch-profile abc switch(config-sync-sp)#	Configures the switch profile, names the switch profile, and enters the switch profile synchronization configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>no sync-peers destination</b> <i>destination IP</i>  <b>Example:</b> switch(config-sync-sp)# no sync-peers destination 10.1.1.1 switch(config-sync-sp)#	Removes the specified switch from the switch profile.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>exit</b>  <b>Example:</b> switch(config-sync-sp)# exit switch#	Exits the switch profile configuration mode.
<b>Step 5</b>	(Optional) <b>show switch-profile</b>  <b>Example:</b> switch# show switch-profile	Displays the switch profile configuration.
<b>Step 6</b>	(Optional) <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>  <b>Example:</b> switch# copy running-config startup-config	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

# Displaying the Switch Profile Buffer

## SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure sync**
2. switch(config-sync) # **switch-profile profile-name**
3. switch(config-sync-sp) # **show switch-profile profile-name buffer**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure sync</b>	Enters configuration synchronization mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config-sync) # <b>switch-profile profile-name</b>	Enters switch profile synchronization configuration mode for the specified switch profile.
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config-sync-sp) # <b>show switch-profile profile-name buffer</b>	Enters interface switch profile synchronization configuration mode for the specified interface.

## Example

The following example shows how to display the switch profile buffer for a service profile called sp:

```
switch# configure sync
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
switch(config-sync)# switch-profile sp
Switch-Profile started, Profile ID is 1
switch(config-sync-sp)# show switch-profile sp buffer
-----
Seq-no  Command
-----
1      vlan 101
1.1    ip igmp snooping querier 10.101.1.1
2      mac address-table static 0000.0000.0001 vlan 101 drop
3      interface Ethernet1/2
3.1    switchport mode trunk
3.2    switchport trunk allowed vlan 101

switch(config-sync-sp)# buffer-move 3 1
switch(config-sync-sp)# show switch-profile sp buffer
-----
Seq-no  Command
-----
1      interface Ethernet1/2
1.1    switchport mode trunk
1.2    switchport trunk allowed vlan 101
2      vlan 101
2.1    ip igmp snooping querier 10.101.1.1
3      mac address-table static 0000.0000.0001 vlan 101 drop
switch(config-sync-sp)#
```

# Synchronizing Configurations After a Switch Reboot

If a Cisco Nexus 3600 platform switch reboots while a new configuration is being committed on a peer switch using a switch profile, complete the following steps to synchronize the peer switches after reload:

## SUMMARY STEPS

1. Reapply configurations that were changed on the peer switch during the reboot.
2. Enter the **commit** command.
3. Verify that the configuration is applied correctly and both peers are back synchronized.

## DETAILED STEPS

- 
- |               |  |
|---------------|--|
| <b>Step 1</b> | Reapply configurations that were changed on the peer switch during the reboot.           |
| <b>Step 2</b> | Enter the <b>commit</b> command.   |
| <b>Step 3</b> | Verify that the configuration is applied correctly and both peers are back synchronized. |
- 

### Example

## Switch Profile Configuration show Commands

The following **show** commands display information about the switch profile.

Command	Purpose
<b>show switch-profile</b> <i>name</i>	Displays the commands in a switch profile.
<b>show switch-profile</b> <i>name</i> <b>buffer</b>	Displays the uncommitted commands in a switch profile, the commands that were moved, and the commands that were deleted.
<b>show switch-profile</b> <i>name</i> <b>peer</b> <i>IP-address</i>	Displays the synchronization status for a peer switch.
<b>show switch-profile</b> <i>name</i> <b>session-history</b>	Displays the status of the last 20 switch profile sessions.
<b>show switch-profile</b> <i>name</i> <b>status</b>	Displays the configuration synchronization status of a peer switch.
<b>show running-config</b> <b>exclude-provision</b>	Displays the configurations for offline preprovisioned interfaces that are hidden.
<b>show running-config</b> <b>switch-profile</b>	Displays the running configuration for the switch profile on the local switch.
<b>show startup-config</b> <b>switch-profile</b>	Displays the startup configuration for the switch profile on the local switch.



For detailed information about the fields in the output from these commands, see the system management command reference for your platform.

## Supported Switch Profile Commands

The following switch profile commands are supported:

- **logging event link-status default**
- **[no] vlan *vlan-range***
- **ip access-list *acl-name***
- **policy-map type network-qos jumbo-frames**
  - **class type network-qos class-default**
  - **mtu *mtu value***
- **system qos**
  - **service-policy type network-qos jumbo-frames**
- **vlan configuration *vlan id***
  - **ip igmp snooping querier *ip***
- **spanning-tree port type edge default**
- **spanning-tree port type edge bpduguard default**
- **spanning-tree loopguard default**
- **no spanning-tree vlan *vlan id***
- **port-channel load-balance ethernet source-dest-port**
- **interface port-channel *number***
  - **description *text***
  - **switchport mode trunk**
  - **switchport trunk allowed vlan *vlan list***
  - **spanning-tree port type network**
  - **no negotiate auto**
  - **vpc peer-link**
- **interface port-channel *number***
  - **switchport access vlan *vlan id***
  - **spanning-tree port type edge**
  - **speed 10000**

- `vpc number`
- `interface ethernetx/y`
  - `switchport access vlan vlanid`
  - `spanning-tree port type edge`
  - `channel-group number mode active`

## Configuration Examples for Switch Profiles

### Creating a Switch Profile on a Local and Peer Switch Example

The following example shows how to create a successful switch profile configuration on a local and peer switch.

#### SUMMARY STEPS

1. Enable CFSOIP distribution on the local and the peer switch.
2. Create a switch profile on the local and the peer switch.
3. Verify that the switch profiles are the same on the local and the peer switch.
4. Verify the commands in the switch profile.
5. Apply the commands to the switch profile and to synchronize the configurations between the local and the peer switch.

#### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	Enable CFSOIP distribution on the local and the peer switch. <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch# configuration terminal switch(config)# cfs ipv4 distribute</pre>	
<b>Step 2</b>	Create a switch profile on the local and the peer switch. <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-sync)# switch-profile abc switch(config-sync-sp)# sync-peers destination 10.1.1.1</pre>	
<b>Step 3</b>	Verify that the switch profiles are the same on the local and the peer switch. <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-sync-sp)# show switch-profile abc status  Start-time: 15801 usecs after Mon Aug 23 06:21:08 2010</pre>	

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<pre>End-time: 6480 usecs after Mon Aug 23 06:21:13 2010  Profile-Revision: 1 Session-type: Initial-Exchange Peer-triggered: Yes Profile-status: Sync Success  Local information: ----- Status: Commit Success Error(s):  Peer information: ----- IP-address: 10.1.1.1 Sync-status: In Sync. Status: Commit Success Error(s):</pre>	
<b>Step 4</b>	<p>Verify the commands in the switch profile.</p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>switch(config-sync-sp-if)# <b>verify</b> Verification Successful</pre>	
<b>Step 5</b>	<p>Apply the commands to the switch profile and to synchronize the configurations between the local and the peer switch.</p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>switch(config-sync-sp)# <b>commit</b> Commit Successful switch(config-sync)#</pre>	

## Verifying the Synchronization Status Example

The following example shows how to verify the synchronization status between the local and the peer switch:

```
switch(config-sync)# show switch-profile switch-profile status
Start-time: 804935 usecs after Mon Aug 23 06:41:10 2010
End-time: 956631 usecs after Mon Aug 23 06:41:20 2010

Profile-Revision: 2
Session-type: Commit
Peer-triggered: No
Profile-status: Sync Success

Local information:
-----
Status: Commit Success
Error(s):

Peer information:
-----
IP-address: 10.1.1.1
Sync-status: In Sync.
Status: Commit Success
Error(s):
```

```
switch(config-sync)#
```

## Displaying the Running Configuration

The following example shows how to display the running configuration of the switch profile on the local switch:

```
switch# configure sync
switch(config-sync)# show running-config switch-profile

switch(config-sync)#
```

## Displaying the Switch Profile Synchronization Between Local and Peer Switches

This example shows how to display the synchronization status for two peer switches:

```
switch1# show switch-profile sp status

Start-time: 491815 usecs after Thu Aug 12 11:54:51 2010
End-time: 449475 usecs after Thu Aug 12 11:54:58 2010

Profile-Revision: 1
Session-type: Initial-Exchange
Peer-triggered: No
Profile-status: Sync Success

Local information:
-----
Status: Commit Success
Error(s):

Peer information:
-----
IP-address: 10.193.194.52
Sync-status: In Sync.
Status: Commit Success
Error(s):

switch1#

switch2# show switch-profile sp status

Start-time: 503194 usecs after Thu Aug 12 11:54:51 2010
End-time: 532989 usecs after Thu Aug 12 11:54:58 2010

Profile-Revision: 1
Session-type: Initial-Exchange
Peer-triggered: Yes
Profile-status: Sync Success

Local information:
-----
Status: Commit Success
Error(s):

Peer information:
-----
```

```

IP-address: 10.193.194.51
Sync-status: In Sync.
Status: Commit Success
Error(s):

```

```
switch2#
```

## Displaying Verify and Commit on Local and Peer Switches

This example shows how to configure a successful verify and commit of the local and peer switch:

```

switch1# configure sync
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
switch1(config-sync)# switch-profile sp
Switch-Profile started, Profile ID is 1
switch1(config-sync-sp)# interface ethernet1/1
switch1(config-sync-sp-if)# description foo
switch1(config-sync-sp-if)# verify
Verification Successful
switch1(config-sync-sp)# commit
Commit Successful
switch1(config-sync)# show running-config switch-profile
switch-profile sp
  sync-peers destination 10.193.194.52
  interface Ethernet1/1
    description foo
switch1(config-sync)# show switch-profile sp status

Start-time: 171513 usecs after Wed Aug 11 17:51:28 2010
End-time: 676451 usecs after Wed Aug 11 17:51:43 2010

Profile-Revision: 3
Session-type: Commit
Peer-triggered: No
Profile-status: Sync Success

Local information:
-----
Status: Commit Success
Error(s):

Peer information:
-----
IP-address: 10.193.194.52
Sync-status: In Sync.
Status: Commit Success
Error(s):

switch1(config-sync)#

switch2# show running-config switch-profile
switch-profile sp
  sync-peers destination 10.193.194.51
  interface Ethernet1/1
    description foo
switch2# show switch-profile sp status

Start-time: 265716 usecs after Wed Aug 11 16:51:28 2010
End-time: 734702 usecs after Wed Aug 11 16:51:43 2010

Profile-Revision: 3
Session-type: Commit

```

```
Peer-triggered: Yes
Profile-status: Sync Success
```

```
Local information:
-----
Status: Commit Success
Error(s):
```

```
Peer information:
-----
IP-address: 10.193.194.51
Sync-status: In Sync.
Status: Commit Success
Error(s):
```

```
switch2#
```

## Successful and Unsuccessful Synchronization Examples

The following example shows a successful synchronization of the switch profile on the peer switch:

```
switch# show switch-profile abc peer

switch# show switch-profile sp peer 10.193.194.52
Peer-sync-status      : In Sync.
Peer-status          : Commit Success
Peer-error(s)        :
switch1#
```

The following example shows an unsuccessful synchronization of a switch profile on the peer switch, with a peer not reachable status:

```
switch# show switch-profile sp peer 10.193.194.52
Peer-sync-status      : Not yet merged. pending-merge:1 received_merge:0
Peer-status          : Peer not reachable
Peer-error(s)        :
switch#
```

## Configuring the Switch Profile Buffer, Moving the Buffer, and Deleting the Buffer

This example shows how to configure the switch profile buffer, the buffer-move configuration, and the buffer-delete configuration:

```
switch# configure sync
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
switch(config-sync)# switch-profile sp
Switch-Profile started, Profile ID is 1
switch(config-sync-sp)# vlan 101
switch(config-sync-sp-vlan)# ip igmp snooping querier 10.101.1.1
switch(config-sync-sp-vlan)# exit
switch(config-sync-sp)# mac address-table static 0000.0000.0001 vlan 101 drop
switch(config-sync-sp)# interface ethernet1/2
switch(config-sync-sp-if)# switchport mode trunk
switch(config-sync-sp-if)# switchport trunk allowed vlan 101
switch(config-sync-sp-if)# exit
switch(config-sync-sp)# show switch-profile sp buffer
-----
Seq-no  Command
-----
```

```
1      vlan 101
1.1    ip igmp snooping querier 10.101.1.1
2      mac address-table static 0000.0000.0001 vlan 101 drop
3      interface Ethernet1/2
3.1    switchport mode trunk
3.2    switchport trunk allowed vlan 101

switch(config-sync-sp)# buffer-move 3 1
switch(config-sync-sp)# show switch-profile sp buffer
-----
Seq-no  Command
-----
1      interface Ethernet1/2
1.1    switchport mode trunk
1.2    switchport trunk allowed vlan 101
2      vlan 101
2.1    ip igmp snooping querier 10.101.1.1
3      mac address-table static 0000.0000.0001 vlan 101 drop

switch(config-sync-sp)# buffer-delete 1
switch(config-sync-sp)# show switch-profile sp buffer
-----
Seq-no  Command
-----
2      vlan 101
2.1    ip igmp snooping querier 10.101.1.1
3      mac address-table static 0000.0000.0001 vlan 101 drop

switch(config-sync-sp)# buffer-delete all
switch(config-sync-sp)# show switch-profile sp buffer
switch(config-sync-sp)#
```







## CHAPTER 4

# Configuring PTP

This chapter describes how to configure the Precision Time Protocol (PTP) on Cisco NX-OS devices.

This chapter includes the following sections:

- [About PTP, on page 33](#)
- [PTP Device Types, on page 33](#)
- [PTP Process, on page 34](#)
- [High Availability for PTP, on page 35](#)
- [Guidelines and Limitations for PTP, on page 35](#)
- [Default Settings for PTP, on page 35](#)
- [Configuring PTP, on page 36](#)

## About PTP

PTP is a time synchronization protocol for nodes distributed across a network. Its hardware timestamp feature provides greater accuracy than other time synchronization protocols such as the Network Time Protocol (NTP).

A PTP system can consist of a combination of PTP and non-PTP devices. PTP devices include ordinary clocks, boundary clocks, and transparent clocks. Non-PTP devices include ordinary network switches, routers, and other infrastructure devices.

PTP is a distributed protocol that specifies how real-time PTP clocks in the system synchronize with each other. These clocks are organized into a master-slave synchronization hierarchy with the grandmaster clock, which is the clock at the top of the hierarchy, determining the reference time for the entire system. Synchronization is achieved by exchanging PTP timing messages, with the members using the timing information to adjust their clocks to the time of their master in the hierarchy. PTP operates within a logical scope called a PTP domain.

## PTP Device Types

The following clocks are common PTP devices:

### Ordinary clock

Communicates with the network based on a single physical port, similar to an end host. An ordinary clock can function as a grandmaster clock.

### Boundary clock

Typically has several physical ports, with each port behaving like a port of an ordinary clock. However, each port shares the local clock, and the clock data sets are common to all ports. Each port decides its individual state, either master (synchronizing other ports connected to it) or slave (synchronizing to a downstream port), based on the best clock available to it through all of the other ports on the boundary clock. Messages that are related to synchronization and establishing the master-slave hierarchy terminate in the protocol engine of a boundary clock and are not forwarded.

### Transparent clock

Forwards all PTP messages like an ordinary switch or router but measures the residence time of a packet in the switch (the time that the packet takes to traverse the transparent clock) and in some cases the link delay of the ingress port for the packet. The ports have no state because the transparent clock does not need to synchronize to the grandmaster clock.

There are two kinds of transparent clocks:

#### End-to-end transparent clock

Measures the residence time of a PTP message and accumulates the times in the correction field of the PTP message or an associated follow-up message.

#### Peer-to-peer transparent clock

Measures the residence time of a PTP message and computes the link delay between each port and a similarly equipped port on another node that shares the link. For a packet, this incoming link delay is added to the residence time in the correction field of the PTP message or an associated follow-up message.




---

**Note** PTP operates only in boundary clock mode. We recommend that you deploy a Grand Master Clock (10 MHz) upstream. The servers contain clocks that require synchronization and are connected to the switch.

End-to-end transparent clock and peer-to-peer transparent clock modes are not supported.

---

## PTP Process

The PTP process consists of two phases: establishing the master-slave hierarchy and synchronizing the clocks.

Within a PTP domain, each port of an ordinary or boundary clock follows this process to determine its state:

- Examines the contents of all received announce messages (issued by ports in the master state)
- Compares the data sets of the foreign master (in the announce message) and the local clock for priority, clock class, accuracy, and so on
- Determines its own state as either master or slave

After the master-slave hierarchy has been established, the clocks are synchronized as follows:

- The master sends a synchronization message to the slave and notes the time it was sent.
- The slave receives the synchronization message and notes the time that it was received. For every synchronization message, there is a follow-up message. The number of sync messages should be equal to the number of follow-up messages.

- The slave sends a delay-request message to the master and notes the time it was sent.
- The master receives the delay-request message and notes the time it was received.
- The master sends a delay-response message to the slave. The number of delay request messages should be equal to the number of delay response messages.
- The slave uses these timestamps to adjust its clock to the time of its master.

## High Availability for PTP

Stateful restarts are not supported for PTP.

## Guidelines and Limitations for PTP

- For Cisco Nexus 3600 Series switches, PTP clock correction is expected to be in the 3-digit range, from 100 to 999 nanoseconds.
- PTP operates only in boundary clock mode. End-to-end transparent clock and peer-to-peer transparent clock modes are not supported.
- PTP supports transport over User Datagram Protocol (UDP). Transport over Ethernet is not supported.
- PTP supports only multicast communication. Negotiated unicast communication is not supported.
- PTP is limited to a single domain per network.
- Forwarding PTP management packets is not supported.
- PTP-capable ports do not identify PTP packets and do not time-stamp or redirect those packets unless you enable PTP on those ports.
- 1 pulse per second (1 PPS) input is not supported.
- PTP over IPv6 is not supported.
- Cisco Nexus switches should be synchronized from the neighboring master using a synchronization log interval that ranges from -2 to -5.

## Default Settings for PTP

The following table lists the default settings for PTP parameters.

**Table 2: Default PTP Parameters**

Parameters	Default
PTP	Disabled
PTP version	2

Parameters	Default
PTP domain	0
PTP priority 1 value when advertising the clock	255
PTP priority 2 value when advertising the clock	255
PTP announce interval	1 log second
PTP sync interval	– 2 log seconds
PTP announce timeout	3 announce intervals
PTP minimum delay request interval	0 log seconds
PTP VLAN	1

## Configuring PTP

### Configuring PTP Globally

You can enable or disable PTP globally on a device. You can also configure various PTP clock parameters to help determine which clock in the network has the highest priority to be selected as the grandmaster.

#### SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config) # **[no] feature ptp**
3. switch(config) # **[no] ptp source ip-address [vrf vrf]**
4. (Optional) switch(config) # **[no] ptp domain number**
5. (Optional) switch(config) # **[no] ptp priority1 value**
6. (Optional) switch(config) # **[no] ptp priority2 value**
7. (Optional) switch(config) # **show ptp brief**
8. (Optional) switch(config) # **show ptp clock**
9. (Optional) switch(config)# **copy running-config startup-config**

#### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config) # <b>[no] feature ptp</b>	Enables or disables PTP on the device.  <b>Note</b> Enabling PTP on the switch does not enable PTP on each interface.
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config) # <b>[no] ptp source ip-address [vrf vrf]</b>	Configures the source IP address for all PTP packets.  The <i>ip-address</i> can be in IPv4 format.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) switch(config) # <b>[no] ptp domain number</b>	Configures the domain number to use for this clock. PTP domains allow you to use multiple independent PTP clocking subdomains on a single network.  The range for the <i>number</i> is from 0 to 128.
<b>Step 5</b>	(Optional) switch(config) # <b>[no] ptp priority1 value</b>	Configures the priority1 value to use when advertising this clock. This value overrides the default criteria (clock quality, clock class, and so on) for the best master clock selection. Lower values take precedence.  The range for the <i>value</i> is from 0 to 255.
<b>Step 6</b>	(Optional) switch(config) # <b>[no] ptp priority2 value</b>	Configures the priority2 value to use when advertising this clock. This value is used to decide between two devices that are otherwise equally matched in the default criteria. For example, you can use the priority2 value to give a specific switch priority over other identical switches.  The range for the <i>value</i> is from 0 to 255.
<b>Step 7</b>	(Optional) switch(config) # <b>show ptp brief</b>	Displays the PTP status.
<b>Step 8</b>	(Optional) switch(config) # <b>show ptp clock</b>	Displays the properties of the local clock.
<b>Step 9</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

The following example shows how to configure PTP globally on the device, specify the source IP address for PTP communications, and configure a preference level for the clock:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# feature ptp
switch(config)# ptp source 10.10.10.1
switch(config)# ptp priority1 1
switch(config)# ptp priority2 1
switch(config)# show ptp brief
PTP port status
-----
Port State
-----
switch(config)# show ptp clock
PTP Device Type: Boundary clock
Clock Identity : 0:22:55:ff:ff:79:a4:c1
Clock Domain: 0
Number of PTP ports: 0
Priority1 : 1
Priority2 : 1
Clock Quality:
Class : 248
Accuracy : 254
Offset (log variance) : 65535
Offset From Master : 0
```

```

Mean Path Delay : 0
Steps removed : 0
Local clock time:Sun Jul 3 14:13:24 2011
switch(config)#

```

## Configuring PTP on an Interface

After you globally enable PTP, it is not enabled on all supported interfaces by default. You must enable PTP interfaces individually.

### Before you begin

Make sure that you have globally enabled PTP on the switch and configured the source IP address for PTP communication.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config) # **interface ethernet slot/port**
3. switch(config-if) # **[no] feature ptp**
4. (Optional) switch(config-if) # **[no] ptp announce {interval log seconds | timeout count}**
5. (Optional) switch(config-if) # **[no] ptp delay request minimum interval log seconds**
6. (Optional) switch(config-if) # **[no] ptp sync interval log seconds**
7. (Optional) switch(config-if) # **[no] ptp vlan vlan-id**
8. (Optional) switch(config-if) # **show ptp brief**
9. (Optional) switch(config-if) # **show ptp port interface interface slot/port**
10. (Optional) switch(config-if)# **copy running-config startup-config**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config) # <b>interface ethernet slot/port</b>	Specifies the interface on which you are enabling PTP and enters interface configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config-if) # <b>[no] feature ptp</b>	Enables or disables PTP on an interface.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) switch(config-if) # <b>[no] ptp announce {interval log seconds   timeout count}</b>	Configures the interval between PTP announce messages on an interface or the number of PTP intervals before a timeout occurs on an interface.  The range for the PTP announcement interval is from 0 to 4 seconds, and the range for the interval timeout is from 2 to 10.
<b>Step 5</b>	(Optional) switch(config-if) # <b>[no] ptp delay request minimum interval log seconds</b>	Configures the minimum interval allowed between PTP delay-request messages when the port is in the master state.  The range is from log(-6) to log(1) seconds. Where, log(-2) = 2 frames per second.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 6</b>	(Optional) switch(config-if) # [no] <b>ptp sync interval</b> <i>log seconds</i>	Configures the interval between PTP synchronization messages on an interface.  The range for the PTP synchronization interval is from -6 log second to 1 second.
<b>Step 7</b>	(Optional) switch(config-if) # [no] <b>ptp vlan</b> <i>vlan-id</i>	Specifies the VLAN for the interface where PTP is being enabled. You can only enable PTP on one VLAN on an interface.  The range is from 1 to 4094.
<b>Step 8</b>	(Optional) switch(config-if) # <b>show ptp brief</b>	Displays the PTP status.
<b>Step 9</b>	(Optional) switch(config-if) # <b>show ptp port interface</b> <i>interface slot/port</i>	Displays the status of the PTP port.
<b>Step 10</b>	(Optional) switch(config-if)# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

This example shows how to configure PTP on an interface and configure the intervals for the announce, delay-request, and synchronization messages:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface ethernet 2/1
switch(config-if)# ptp
switch(config-if)# ptp announce interval 3
switch(config-if)# ptp announce timeout 2
switch(config-if)# ptp delay-request minimum interval 4
switch(config-if)# ptp sync interval -1
switch(config-if)# show ptp brief
PTP port status
-----
Port State
-----
Eth2/1 Master
switch(config-if)# show ptp port interface ethernet 2/1
PTP Port Dataset: Eth2/1
Port identity: clock identity: 0:22:55:ff:ff:79:a4:c1
Port identity: port number: 1028
PTP version: 2
Port state: Master
Delay request interval(log mean): 4
Announce receipt time out: 2
Peer mean path delay: 0
Announce interval(log mean): 3
Sync interval(log mean): -1
Delay Mechanism: End to End
Peer delay request interval(log mean): 0
switch(config-if)#
```

## Verifying the PTP Configuration

Use one of the following commands to verify the configuration:

*Table 3: PTP Show Commands*

Command	Purpose
<b>show ptp brief</b>	Displays the PTP status.
<b>show ptp clock</b>	Displays the properties of the local clock, including the clock identity.
<b>show ptp clock foreign-masters-record</b>	Displays the state of foreign masters known to the PTP process. For each foreign master, the output displays the clock identity, basic clock properties, and whether the clock is being used as a grandmaster.
<b>show ptp corrections</b>	Displays the last few PTP corrections.
<b>show ptp parent</b>	Displays the properties of the PTP parent.
<b>show ptp port interface ethernet <i>slot/port</i></b>	Displays the status of the PTP port on the switch.





## CHAPTER 5

# Configuring NTP

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [Information About NTP, on page 41](#)
- [NTP as Time Server, on page 42](#)
- [Distributing NTP Using CFS, on page 42](#)
- [Clock Manager, on page 42](#)
- [High Availability, on page 42](#)
- [Virtualization Support, on page 42](#)
- [Prerequisites for NTP, on page 43](#)
- [Guidelines and Limitations for NTP, on page 43](#)
- [Default Settings, on page 44](#)
- [Configuring NTP, on page 44](#)
- [Verifying the NTP Configuration, on page 57](#)
- [Configuration Examples for NTP, on page 58](#)

## Information About NTP

The Network Time Protocol (NTP) synchronizes the time of day among a set of distributed time servers and clients so that you can correlate events when you receive system logs and other time-specific events from multiple network devices. NTP uses the User Datagram Protocol (UDP) as its transport protocol. All NTP communications use Coordinated Universal Time (UTC).

An NTP server usually receives its time from an authoritative time source, such as a radio clock or an atomic clock attached to a time server, and then distributes this time across the network. NTP is extremely efficient; no more than one packet per minute is necessary to synchronize two machines to within a millisecond of each other.

NTP uses a stratum to describe the distance between a network device and an authoritative time source:

- A stratum 1 time server is directly attached to an authoritative time source (such as a radio or atomic clock or a GPS time source).
- A stratum 2 NTP server receives its time through NTP from a stratum 1 time server.

Before synchronizing, NTP compares the time reported by several network devices and does not synchronize with one that is significantly different, even if it is a stratum 1. Because Cisco NX-OS cannot connect to a radio or atomic clock and act as a stratum 1 server, we recommend that you use the public NTP servers

available on the Internet. If the network is isolated from the Internet, Cisco NX-OS allows you to configure the time as though it were synchronized through NTP, even though it was not.



---

**Note** You can create NTP peer relationships to designate the time-serving hosts that you want your network device to consider synchronizing with and to keep accurate time if a server failure occurs.

---

The time kept on a device is a critical resource, so we strongly recommend that you use the security features of NTP to avoid the accidental or malicious setting of incorrect time. Two mechanisms are available: an access list-based restriction scheme and an encrypted authentication mechanism.

## NTP as Time Server

Other devices can configure it as a time server. You can also configure the device to act as an authoritative NTP server, enabling it to distribute time even when it is not synchronized to an outside time source.

## Distributing NTP Using CFS

Cisco Fabric Services (CFS) distributes the local NTP configuration to all Cisco devices in the network.

After enabling CFS on your device, a network-wide lock is applied to NTP whenever an NTP configuration is started. After making the NTP configuration changes, you can discard or commit them.

In either case, the CFS lock is then released from the NTP application.

## Clock Manager

Clocks are resources that need to be shared across different processes.

Multiple time synchronization protocol, such as NTP might be running in the system.

## High Availability

Stateless restarts are supported for NTP. After a reboot or a supervisor switchover, the running configuration is applied.

You can configure NTP peers to provide redundancy in case an NTP server fails.

## Virtualization Support

NTP recognizes virtual routing and forwarding (VRF) instances. NTP uses the default VRF if you do not configure a specific VRF for the NTP server and NTP peer.

## Prerequisites for NTP

NTP has the following prerequisites:

- To configure NTP, you must have connectivity to at least one server that is running NTP.

## Guidelines and Limitations for NTP

NTP has the following configuration guidelines and limitations:

- The **show ntp session status** CLI command does not show the last action timestamp, the last action, the last action result, and the last action failure reason.
- NTP server functionality is supported.
- You should have a peer association with another device only when you are sure that your clock is reliable (which means that you are a client of a reliable NTP server).
- A peer that is configured alone takes on the role of a server and should be used as a backup. If you have two servers, you can configure several devices to point to one server and the remaining devices to point to the other server. You can then configure a peer association between these two servers to create a more reliable NTP configuration.
- If you have only one server, you should configure all the devices as clients to that server.
- You can configure up to 64 NTP entities (servers and peers).
- If CFS is disabled for NTP, NTP does not distribute any configuration and does not accept a distribution from other devices in the network.
- After CFS distribution is enabled for NTP, the entry of an NTP configuration command locks the network for NTP configuration until a **commit** command is entered. During the lock, no changes can be made to the NTP configuration by any other device in the network except the device that initiated the lock.
- If you use CFS to distribute NTP, all devices in the network should have the same VRFs configured as you use for NTP.
- If you configure NTP in a VRF, ensure that the NTP server and peers can reach each other through the configured VRFs.
- You must manually distribute NTP authentication keys on the NTP server and Cisco NX-OS devices across the network.
- Use NTP broadcast or multicast associations when time accuracy and reliability requirements are modest, your network is localized, and the network has more than 20 clients. We recommend that you use NTP broadcast or multicast associations in networks that have limited bandwidth, system memory, or CPU resources.
- A maximum of four ACLs can be configured for a single NTP access group.



**Note** Time accuracy is marginally reduced in NTP broadcast associations because information flows only one way.

## Default Settings

The following are the default settings for NTP parameters.

Parameters	Default
NTP	Enabled for all interfaces
NTP passive (enabling NTP to form associations)	Enabled
NTP authentication	Disabled
NTP access	Enabled
NTP access group match all	Disabled
NTP broadcast server	Disabled
NTP multicast server	Disabled
NTP multicast client	Disabled
NTP logging	Disabled

## Configuring NTP

### Enabling or Disabling NTP on an Interface

You can enable or disable NTP on a particular interface. NTP is enabled on all interfaces by default.

#### SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **interface** *type slot/port*
3. switch(config-if)# **[no] ntp disable** {ip | ipv6}
4. (Optional) switch(config)# **copy running-config startup-config**

#### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>interface</b> <i>type slot/port</i>	Enters interface configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config-if)# <b>[no] ntp disable {ip   ipv6}</b>	Disables NTP IPv4 or IPv6 on the specified interface.  Use the <b>no</b> form of this command to reenable NTP on the interface.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

The following example shows how to enable or disable NTP on an interface:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface ethernet 6/1
switch(config-if)# ntp disable ip
switch(config-if)# copy running-config startup-config
```

## Configuring the Device as an Authoritative NTP Server

You can configure the device to act as an authoritative NTP server, enabling it to distribute time even when it is not synchronized to an existing time server.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. **[no] ntp master [stratum]**
3. (Optional) **show running-config ntp**
4. (Optional) switch(config)# **copy running-config startup-config**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>[no] ntp master [stratum]</b>	Configures the device as an authoritative NTP server.  You can specify a different stratum level from which NTP clients get their time synchronized. The range is from 1 to 15.
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) <b>show running-config ntp</b>	Displays the NTP configuration.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

This example shows how to configure the Cisco NX-OS device as an authoritative NTP server with a different stratum level:

```
switch# configure terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
switch(config)# ntp master 5
```

## Configuring an NTP Server and Peer

You can configure an NTP server and peer.

### Before you begin

Make sure that you know the IP address or DNS names of your NTP server and its peers.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# [**no**] **ntp server** {*ip-address* | *ipv6-address* | *dns-name*} [**key** *key-id*] [**maxpoll** *max-poll*] [**minpoll** *min-poll*] [**prefer**] [**use-vrf** *vrf-name*]
3. switch(config)# [**no**] **ntp peer** {*ip-address* | *ipv6-address* | *dns-name*} [**key** *key-id*] [**maxpoll** *max-poll*] [**minpoll** *min-poll*] [**prefer**] [**use-vrf** *vrf-name*]
4. (Optional) switch(config)# **show ntp peers**
5. (Optional) switch(config)# **copy running-config startup-config**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# [ <b>no</b> ] <b>ntp server</b> { <i>ip-address</i>   <i>ipv6-address</i>   <i>dns-name</i> } [ <b>key</b> <i>key-id</i> ] [ <b>maxpoll</b> <i>max-poll</i> ] [ <b>minpoll</b> <i>min-poll</i> ] [ <b>prefer</b> ] [ <b>use-vrf</b> <i>vrf-name</i> ]	<p>Forms an association with a server.</p> <p>Use the <b>key</b> keyword to configure a key to be used while communicating with the NTP server.</p> <p>The range for the <i>key-id</i> argument is from 1 to 65535.</p> <p>Use the <b>maxpoll</b> and <b>minpoll</b> keywords to configure the maximum and minimum intervals in which to poll a server. The range for the <i>max-poll</i> and <i>min-poll</i> arguments is from 4 to 16 (configured as powers of 2, so effectively 16 to 65536 seconds), and the default values are 6 and 4, respectively (<i>maxpoll</i> default = 64 seconds, <i>minpoll</i> default = 16 seconds).</p> <p>Use the <b>prefer</b> keyword to make this the preferred NTP server for the device.</p> <p>Use the <b>use-vrf</b> keyword to configure the NTP server to communicate over the specified VRF.</p>

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<p>The <i>vrf-name</i> argument can be default, management, or any case-sensitive alphanumeric string up to 32 characters.</p> <p><b>Note</b> If you configure a key to be used while communicating with the NTP server, make sure that the key exists as a trusted key on the device.</p>
<b>Step 3</b>	<pre>switch(config)# [no] ntp peer {ip-address   ipv6-address   dns-name} [key key-id] [maxpoll max-poll] [minpoll min-poll] [prefer] [use-vrf vrf-name]</pre>	<p>Forms an association with a peer. You can specify multiple peer associations.</p> <p>Use the <b>key</b> keyword to configure a key to be used while communicating with the NTP peer. The range for the <i>key-id</i> argument is from 1 to 65535.</p> <p>Use the <b>maxpoll</b> and <b>minpoll</b> keywords to configure the maximum and minimum intervals in which to poll a server. The range for the <i>max-poll</i> and <i>min-poll</i> arguments is from 4 to 17 (configured as powers of 2, so effectively 16 to 131072 seconds), and the default values are 6 and 4, respectively (<i>maxpoll</i> default = 64 seconds, <i>minpoll</i> default = 16 seconds).</p> <p>Use the <b>prefer</b> keyword to make this the preferred NTP peer for the device.</p> <p>Use the <b>use-vrf</b> keyword to configure the NTP peer to communicate over the specified VRF. The <i>vrf-name</i> argument can be <b>default</b>, <b>management</b>, or any case-sensitive alphanumeric string up to 32 characters.</p>
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>show ntp peers</b>	<p>Displays the configured server and peers.</p> <p><b>Note</b> A domain name is resolved only when you have a DNS server configured.</p>
<b>Step 5</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

## Configuring NTP Authentication

You can configure the device to authenticate the time sources to which the local clock is synchronized. When you enable NTP authentication, the device synchronizes to a time source only if the source carries one of the authentication keys specified by the **ntp trusted-key** command. The device drops any packets that fail the authentication check and prevents them from updating the local clock. NTP authentication is disabled by default.

### Before you begin

Authentication for NTP servers and NTP peers is configured on a per-association basis using the **key** keyword on each **ntp server** and **ntp peer** command. Make sure that you configured all NTP server and peer associations

with the authentication keys that you plan to specify in this procedure. Any **ntp server** or **ntp peer** commands that do not specify the **key** keyword will continue to operate without authentication.

## SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **[no] ntp authentication-key number md5 md5-string**
3. (Optional) switch(config)# **show ntp authentication-keys**
4. switch(config)# **[no] ntp trusted-key number**
5. (Optional) switch(config)# **show ntp trusted-keys**
6. switch(config)# **[no] ntp authenticate**
7. (Optional) switch(config)# **show ntp authentication-status**
8. (Optional) switch(config)# **copy running-config startup-config**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>[no] ntp authentication-key number md5 md5-string</b>	Defines the authentication keys. The device does not synchronize to a time source unless the source has one of these authentication keys and the key number is specified by the <b>ntp trusted-key number</b> command.
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>show ntp authentication-keys</b>	Displays the configured NTP authentication keys.
<b>Step 4</b>	switch(config)# <b>[no] ntp trusted-key number</b>	Specifies one or more keys (defined in Step 2) that an unconfigured remote symmetric, broadcast, and multicast time source must provide in its NTP packets in order for the device to synchronize to it. The range for trusted keys is from 1 to 65535.  This command provides protection against accidentally synchronizing the device to a time source that is not trusted.  This command does not affect time sources configured with the <b>ntp server</b> and <b>ntp peer</b> configuration comments.
<b>Step 5</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>show ntp trusted-keys</b>	Displays the configured NTP trusted keys.
<b>Step 6</b>	switch(config)# <b>[no] ntp authenticate</b>	Enables or disables the NTP authentication feature. NTP authentication is disabled by default.
<b>Step 7</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>show ntp authentication-status</b>	Displays the status of NTP authentication.
<b>Step 8</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.



### Example

This example shows how to configure the device to synchronize only to time sources that provide authentication key 42 in their NTP packets:

```
switch# configure terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
switch(config)# ntp authentication-key 42 md5 aNiceKey
switch(config)# ntp server 10.1.1.1 key 42
switch(config)# ntp trusted-key 42
switch(config)# ntp authenticate
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
[#####] 100%
switch(config)#
```

## Configuring NTP Access Restrictions

You can control access to NTP services by using access groups. Specifically, you can specify the types of requests that the device allows and the servers from which it accepts responses.

If you do not configure any access groups, NTP access is granted to all devices. If you configure any access groups, NTP access is granted only to the remote device whose source IP address passes the access list criteria.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **[no] ntp access-group match-all | {peer | serve | serve-only | query-only} access-list-name**
3. switch(config)# **show ntp access-groups**
4. (Optional) switch(config)# **copy running-config startup-config**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# <b>[no] ntp access-group match-all   {peer   serve   serve-only   query-only} access-list-name</b>	<p>Creates or removes an access group to control NTP access and applies a basic IP access list.</p> <p>The access group options are scanned in the following order, from least restrictive to most restrictive. However, if NTP matches a deny ACL rule in a configured peer, ACL processing stops and does not continue to the next access group option.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The <b>peer</b> keyword enables the device to receive time requests and NTP control queries and to synchronize itself to the servers specified in the access list.</li> <li>• The <b>serve</b> keyword enables the device to receive time requests and NTP control queries from the servers specified in the access list but not to synchronize itself to the specified servers.</li> </ul>

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The <b>serve-only</b> keyword enables the device to receive only time requests from servers specified in the access list.</li> <li>The <b>query-only</b> keyword enables the device to receive only NTP control queries from the servers specified in the access list.</li> <li>The <b>match-all</b> keyword enables the access group options to be scanned in the following order, from least restrictive to most restrictive: peer, serve, serve-only, query-only. If the incoming packet does not match the ACL in the peer access group, it goes to the serve access group to be processed. If the packet does not match the ACL in the serve access group, it goes to the serve-only access group, and so on.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config)# <b>show ntp access-groups</b>	(Optional) Displays the NTP access group configuration.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

This example shows how to configure the device to allow it to synchronize to a peer from access group "accesslist1":

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# ntp access-group peer accesslist1
switch(config)# show ntp access-groups
Access List Type
-----
accesslist1 Peer
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
[#####] 100%
switch(config)#
```

## Configuring the NTP Source IP Address

NTP sets the source IP address for all NTP packets based on the address of the interface through which the NTP packets are sent. You can configure NTP to use a specific source IP address.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. [no] **ntp source ip-address**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	[no] <b>ntp source</b> <i>ip-address</i>	Configures the source IP address for all NTP packets. The <i>ip-address</i> can be in IPv4 or IPv6 format.

**Example**

This example shows how to configure an NTP source IP address of 192.0.2.2.

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# ntp source 192.0.2.2
```

## Configuring the NTP Source Interface

You can configure NTP to use a specific interface.

## SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. [no] **ntp source-interface** *interface*

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	[no] <b>ntp source-interface</b> <i>interface</i>	Configures the source interface for all NTP packets. The following list contains the valid values for <i>interface</i> . <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ethernet</li> <li>• loopback</li> <li>• mgmt</li> <li>• port-channel</li> <li>• vlan</li> </ul>

**Example**

This example shows how to configure the NTP source interface:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# ntp source-interface ethernet
```

## Configuring an NTP Broadcast Server

You can configure an NTP IPv4 broadcast server on an interface. The device then sends broadcast packets through that interface periodically. The client is not required to send a response.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **interface** *type slot/port*
3. switch(config-if)# **[no] ntp broadcast** [*destination ip-address*] [**key** *key-id*] [*version number*]
4. switch(config-if)# **exit**
5. (Optional) switch(config)# **[no] ntp broadcastdelay** *delay*
6. (Optional) switch(config)# **copy running-config startup-config**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>interface</b> <i>type slot/port</i>	Enters interface configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config-if)# <b>[no] ntp broadcast</b> [ <i>destination ip-address</i> ] [ <b>key</b> <i>key-id</i> ] [ <i>version number</i> ]	Enables an NTP IPv4 broadcast server on the specified interface. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>destination</b> <i>ip-address</i>—Configures the broadcast destination IP address.</li> <li>• <b>key</b> <i>key-id</i>—Configures the broadcast authentication key number. The range is from 1 to 65535.</li> <li>• <i>version number</i>—Configures the NTP version. The range is from 2 to 4.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 4</b>	switch(config-if)# <b>exit</b>	Exits interface configuration mode.
<b>Step 5</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>[no] ntp broadcastdelay</b> <i>delay</i>	Configures the estimated broadcast round-trip delay in microseconds. The range is from 1 to 999999.
<b>Step 6</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

This example shows how to configure an NTP broadcast server:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface ethernet 6/1
switch(config-if)# ntp broadcast destination 192.0.2.10
switch(config-if)# exit
switch(config)# ntp broadcastdelay 100
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
```

## Configuring an NTP Multicast Server

You can configure an NTP IPv4 or IPv6 multicast server on an interface. The device then sends multicast packets through that interface periodically.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **interface** *type slot/port*
3. switch(config-if)# **[no] ntp multicast** [*ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address*] [**key** *key-id*] [*ttl value*] [*version number*]
4. (Optional) switch(config-if)# **copy running-config startup-config**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>interface</b> <i>type slot/port</i>	Enters interface configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config-if)# <b>[no] ntp multicast</b> [ <i>ipv4-address</i>   <i>ipv6-address</i> ] [ <b>key</b> <i>key-id</i> ] [ <i>ttl value</i> ] [ <i>version number</i> ]	Enables an NTP IPv4 or IPv6 multicast server on the specified interface. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>ipv4-address</i> or <i>ipv6-address</i>— Multicast IPv4 or IPv6 address.</li> <li>• <b>key</b> <i>key-id</i>—Configures the broadcast authentication key number. The range is from 1 to 65535.</li> <li>• <i>ttl value</i>—Time-to-live value of the multicast packets. The range is from 1 to 255.</li> <li>• <i>version number</i>—NTP version. The range is from 2 to 4.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) switch(config-if)# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

This example shows how to configure an Ethernet interface to send NTP multicast packets:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface ethernet 2/2
switch(config-if)# ntp multicast FF02::1:FF0E:8C6C
switch(config-if)# copy running-config startup-config
```

## Configuring an NTP Multicast Client

You can configure an NTP multicast client on an interface. The device then listens to NTP multicast messages and discards any messages that come from an interface for which multicast is not configured.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **interface** *type slot/port*
3. switch(config-if)# **[no] ntp multicast client** [*ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address*]
4. (Optional) switch(config-if)# **copy running-config startup-config**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>interface</b> <i>type slot/port</i>	Enters interface configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config-if)# <b>[no] ntp multicast client</b> [ <i>ipv4-address</i>   <i>ipv6-address</i> ]	Enables the specified interface to receive NTP multicast packets.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) switch(config-if)# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

This example shows how to configure an Ethernet interface to receive NTP multicast packets:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface ethernet 2/3
switch(config-if)# ntp multicast client FF02::1:FF0E:8C6C
switch(config-if)# copy running-config startup-config
```

## Configuring NTP Logging

You can configure NTP logging in order to generate system logs with significant NTP events. NTP logging is disabled by default.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **[no] ntp logging**
3. (Optional) switch(config)# **show ntp logging-status**
4. (Optional) switch(config)# **copy running-config startup-config**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>[no] ntp logging</b>	Enables or disables system logs to be generated with significant NTP events. NTP logging is disabled by default.
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>show ntp logging-status</b>	Displays the NTP logging configuration status.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

**Example**

The following example shows how to enable NTP logging in order to generate system logs with significant NTP events:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# ntp logging
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
[#####] 100%
switch(config)#
```

**Enabling CFS Distribution for NTP**

You can enable CFS distribution for NTP in order to distribute the NTP configuration to other CFS-enabled devices.

**Before you begin**

Make sure that you have enabled CFS distribution for the device.

## SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **[no] ntp distribute**
3. (Optional) switch(config)# **show ntp status**
4. (Optional) switch(config)# **copy running-config startup-config**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>[no] ntp distribute</b>	Enables or disables the device to receive NTP configuration updates that are distributed through CFS.
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>show ntp status</b>	Displays the NTP CFS distribution status.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

This example shows how to enable the device to receive NTP configuration updates through CFS:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# ntp distribute
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
```

## Committing NTP Configuration Changes

When you commit the NTP configuration changes, the effective database is overwritten by the configuration changes in the pending database and all the devices in the network receive the same configuration.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **ntp commit**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>ntp commit</b>	Distributes the NTP configuration changes to all Cisco NX-OS devices in the network and releases the CFS lock. This command overwrites the effective database with the changes made to the pending database.

## Discarding NTP Configuration Changes

After making the configuration changes, you can choose to discard the changes instead of committing them. If you discard the changes, Cisco NX-OS removes the pending database changes and releases the CFS lock.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **ntp abort**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.



	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	switch(config)# ntp abort	Discards the NTP configuration changes in the pending database and releases the CFS lock. Use this command on the device where you started the NTP configuration.

## Releasing the CFS Session Lock

If you have performed an NTP configuration and have forgotten to release the lock by either committing or discarding the changes, you or another administrator can release the lock from any device in the network. This action also discards pending database changes.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **clear ntp session**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# <b>clear ntp session</b>	Discards the NTP configuration changes in the pending database and releases the CFS lock.

## Verifying the NTP Configuration

Command	Purpose
<b>show ntp access-groups</b>	Displays the NTP access group configuration.
<b>show ntp authentication-keys</b>	Displays the configured NTP authentication keys.
<b>show ntp authentication-status</b>	Displays the status of NTP authentication.
<b>show ntp logging-status</b>	Displays the NTP logging status.
<b>show ntp peer-status</b>	Displays the status for all NTP servers and peers.
<b>show ntp peer</b>	Displays all the NTP peers.
<b>show ntp pending</b>	Displays the temporary CFS database for NTP.
<b>show ntp pending-diff</b>	Displays the difference between the pending CFS database and the current NTP configuration.
<b>show ntp rts-update</b>	Displays the RTS update status.
<b>show ntp session status</b>	Displays the NTP CFS distribution session information.

Command	Purpose
<code>show ntp source</code>	Displays the configured NTP source IP address.
<code>show ntp source-interface</code>	Displays the configured NTP source interface.
<code>show ntp statistics {io   local   memory   peer {ipaddr {ipv4-addr}   name peer-name}}</code>	Displays the NTP statistics.
<code>show ntp status</code>	Displays the NTP CFS distribution status.
<code>show ntp trusted-keys</code>	Displays the configured NTP trusted keys.
<code>show running-config ntp</code>	Displays NTP information.

## Configuration Examples for NTP

### Configuration Examples for NTP

This example shows how to configure an NTP server and peer, enable NTP authentication, enable NTP logging, and then save the startup configuration so that it is saved across reboots and restarts:

```
switch# configure terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
switch(config)# ntp server 192.0.2.105 key 42
switch(config)# ntp peer 192.0.2.105
switch(config)# show ntp peers
-----
Peer IP Address Serv/Peer
-----
192.0.2.100 Peer (configured)
192.0.2.105 Server (configured)
switch(config)# ntp authentication-key 42 md5 aNiceKey
switch(config)# show ntp authentication-keys
-----
Auth key MD5 String
-----
42 aNicekey
switch(config)# ntp trusted-key 42
switch(config)# show ntp trusted-keys
Trusted Keys:
42
switch(config)# ntp authenticate
switch(config)# show ntp authentication-status
Authentication enabled.
switch(config)# ntp logging
switch(config)# show ntp logging
NTP logging enabled.
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
[#####] 100%
switch(config)#
```

This example shows an NTP access group configuration with the following restrictions:

- Peer restrictions are applied to IP addresses that pass the criteria of the access list named “peer-acl.”
- Serve restrictions are applied to IP addresses that pass the criteria of the access list named “serve-acl.”

- Serve-only restrictions are applied to IP addresses that pass the criteria of the access list named “serve-only-acl.”
- Query-only restrictions are applied to IP addresses that pass the criteria of the access list named “query-only-acl.”

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# ntp peer 10.1.1.1
switch(config)# ntp peer 10.2.2.2
switch(config)# ntp peer 10.3.3.3
switch(config)# ntp peer 10.4.4.4
switch(config)# ntp peer 10.5.5.5
switch(config)# ntp peer 10.6.6.6
switch(config)# ntp peer 10.7.7.7
switch(config)# ntp peer 10.8.8.8
switch(config)# ntp access-group peer peer-acl
switch(config)# ntp access-group serve serve-acl
switch(config)# ntp access-group serve-only serve-only-acl
switch(config)# ntp access-group query-only query-only-acl
switch(config)# ip access-list peer-acl
switch(config-acl)# 10 permit ip host 10.1.1.1 any
switch(config-acl)# 20 permit ip host 10.8.8.8 any
switch(config)# ip access-list serve-acl
switch(config-acl)# 10 permit ip host 10.4.4.4 any
switch(config-acl)# 20 permit ip host 10.5.5.5 any
switch(config)# ip access-list serve-only-acl
switch(config-acl)# 10 permit ip host 10.6.6.6 any
switch(config-acl)# 20 permit ip host 10.7.7.7 any
switch(config)# ip access-list query-only-acl
switch(config-acl)# 10 permit ip host 10.2.2.2 any
switch(config-acl)# 20 permit ip host 10.3.3.3 any
```





## CHAPTER 6

# Configuring Session Manager

---

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [About Session Manager, on page 61](#)
- [Guidelines and Limitations for Session Manager, on page 61](#)
- [Configuring Session Manager, on page 62](#)
- [Verifying the Session Manager Configuration, on page 64](#)

## About Session Manager

Session Manager allows you to implement your configuration changes in batch mode. Session Manager works in the following phases:

- **Configuration session**—Creates a list of commands that you want to implement in session manager mode.
- **Validation**—Provides a basic semantic check on your configuration. Cisco NX-OS returns an error if the semantic check fails on any part of the configuration.
- **Verification**—Verifies the configuration as a whole, based on the existing hardware and software configuration and resources. Cisco NX-OS returns an error if the configuration does not pass this verification phase.
- **Commit**—Cisco NX-OS verifies the complete configuration and implements the changes atomically to the device. If a failure occurs, Cisco NX-OS reverts to the original configuration.
- **Abort**—Discards the configuration changes before implementation.

You can optionally end a configuration session without committing the changes. You can also save a configuration session.

## Guidelines and Limitations for Session Manager

Session Manager has the following configuration guidelines and limitations:

- Session Manager supports only the access control list (ACL) feature.
- You can create up to 32 configuration sessions.
- You can configure a maximum of 20,000 commands across all sessions.

# Configuring Session Manager

## Creating a Session

You can create up to 32 configuration sessions.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure session** *name*
2. (Optional) switch(config-s)# **show configuration session** [*name*]
3. (Optional) switch(config-s)# **save** *location*

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure session</b> <i>name</i>	Creates a configuration session and enters session configuration mode. The name can be any alphanumeric string.  Displays the contents of the session.
<b>Step 2</b>	(Optional) switch(config-s)# <b>show configuration session</b> [ <i>name</i> ]	Displays the contents of the session.
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) switch(config-s)# <b>save</b> <i>location</i>	Saves the session to a file. The location can be in bootflash or volatile.

## Configuring ACLs in a Session

You can configure ACLs within a configuration session.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure session** *name*
2. switch(config-s)# **ip access-list** *name*
3. (Optional) switch(config-s-acl)# **permit** *protocol source destination*
4. switch(config-s-acl)# **interface** *interface-type number*
5. switch(config-s-if)# **ip port access-group** *name in*
6. (Optional) switch# **show configuration session** [*name*]

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure session</b> <i>name</i>	Creates a configuration session and enters session configuration mode. The name can be any alphanumeric string.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config-s)# <b>ip access-list</b> <i>name</i>	Creates an ACL.
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) switch(config-s-acl)# <b>permit</b> <i>protocol source destination</i>	Adds a permit statement to the ACL.
<b>Step 4</b>	switch(config-s-acl)# <b>interface</b> <i>interface-type number</i>	Enters interface configuration mode.
<b>Step 5</b>	switch(config-s-if)# <b>ip port access-group</b> <i>name in</i>	Adds a port access group to the interface.
<b>Step 6</b>	(Optional) switch# <b>show configuration session</b> [ <i>name</i> ]	Displays the contents of the session.

## Verifying a Session

To verify a session, use the following command in session mode:

Command	Purpose
switch(config-s)# <b>verify</b> [ <b>verbose</b> ]	Verifies the commands in the configuration session.

## Committing a Session

To commit a session, use the following command in session mode:

Command	Purpose
switch(config-s)# <b>commit</b> [ <b>verbose</b> ]	Commits the commands in the configuration session.

## Saving a Session

To save a session, use the following command in session mode:

Command	Purpose
switch(config-s)# <b>save</b> <i>location</i>	(Optional) Saves the session to a file. The location can be in bootflash or volatile.

## Discarding a Session

To discard a session, use the following command in session mode:

Command	Purpose
switch(config-s)# <b>abort</b>	Discards the configuration session without applying the commands.

## Configuration Example for Session Manager

The following example shows how to create a configuration session for ACLs:

```

switch# configure session name test2
switch(config-s)# ip access-list acl2
switch(config-s-acl)# permit tcp any any
switch(config-s-acl)# exit
switch(config-s)# interface Ethernet 1/4
switch(config-s-ip)# ip port access-group acl2 in
switch(config-s-ip)# exit
switch(config-s)# verify
switch(config-s)# exit
switch# show configuration session test2

```

## Verifying the Session Manager Configuration

To verify Session Manager configuration information, perform one of the following tasks:

Command	Purpose
<b>show configuration session</b> [ <i>name</i> ]	Displays the contents of the configuration session.
<b>show configuration session status</b> [ <i>name</i> ]	Displays the status of the configuration session.
<b>show configuration session summary</b>	Displays a summary of all the configuration sessions.





## CHAPTER

# 7

## Configuring the Scheduler

---

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [Information About the Scheduler, on page 65](#)
- [Guidelines and Limitations for the Scheduler, on page 66](#)
- [Default Settings for the Scheduler, on page 66](#)
- [Configuring the Scheduler, on page 67](#)
- [Verifying the Scheduler Configuration, on page 74](#)
- [Configuration Examples for the Scheduler, on page 74](#)
- [Standards for the Scheduler, on page 75](#)

## Information About the Scheduler

The scheduler allows you to define and set a timetable for maintenance activities such as the following:

- Quality of service policy changes
- Data backup
- Saving a configuration

Jobs consist of a single command or multiple commands that define routine activities. Jobs can be scheduled one time or at periodic intervals.

The scheduler defines a job and its timetable as follows:

### **Job**

A routine task or tasks defined as a command list and completed according to a specified schedule.

### **Schedule**

The timetable for completing a job. You can assign multiple jobs to a schedule.

A schedule is defined as either periodic or one-time only:

- **Periodic mode**— A recurring interval that continues until you delete the job. You can configure the following types of intervals:
  - **Daily**— Job is completed once a day.
  - **Weekly**— Job is completed once a week.

- Monthly—Job is completed once a month.
- Delta—Job begins at the specified start time and then at specified intervals (days:hours:minutes).
- One-time mode—Job is completed only once at a specified time.

## Remote User Authentication

Before starting a job, the scheduler authenticates the user who created the job. Because user credentials from a remote authentication are not retained long enough to support a scheduled job, you must locally configure the authentication passwords for users who create jobs. These passwords are part of the scheduler configuration and are not considered a locally configured user.

Before starting the job, the scheduler validates the local password against the password from the remote authentication server.

## Scheduler Log Files

The scheduler maintains a log file that contains the job output. If the size of the job output is greater than the size of the log file, the output is truncated.

## Guidelines and Limitations for the Scheduler

- The scheduler can fail if it encounters one of the following while performing a job:
  - If a feature license is expired when a job for that feature is scheduled.
  - If a feature is disabled at the time when a job for that feature is scheduled.
- Verify that you have configured the time. The scheduler does not apply a default timetable. If you create a schedule, assign jobs, and do not configure the time, the job is not started.
- While defining a job, verify that no interactive or disruptive commands (for example, **copy bootflash:file ftp:URI**, **write erase**, and other similar commands) are specified because the job is started and conducted noninteractively.

## Default Settings for the Scheduler

*Table 4: Default Command Scheduler Parameters*

Parameters	Default
Scheduler state	Disabled
Log file size	16 KB

# Configuring the Scheduler

## Enabling the Scheduler

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config) # **feature scheduler**
3. (Optional) switch(config) # **show scheduler config**
4. (Optional) switch(config)# **copy running-config startup-config**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config) # <b>feature scheduler</b>	Enables the scheduler.
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) switch(config) # <b>show scheduler config</b>	Displays the scheduler configuration.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

This example shows how to enable the scheduler:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# feature scheduler
switch(config)# show scheduler config
config terminal
  feature scheduler
  scheduler logfile size 16
end
switch(config)#
```

## Defining the Scheduler Log File Size

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config) # **scheduler logfile size value**
3. (Optional) switch(config)# **copy running-config startup-config**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config) # <b>scheduler logfile size</b> <i>value</i>	Defines the scheduler log file size in kilobytes.  The range is from 16 to 1024. The default log file size is 16.  <b>Note</b> If the size of the job output is greater than the size of the log file, the output is truncated.
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

**Example**

This example shows how to define the scheduler log file size:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# scheduler logfile size 1024
switch(config)#
```

## Configuring Remote User Authentication

Remote users must authenticate with their clear text password before creating and configuring jobs.

Remote user passwords are always shown in encrypted form in the output of the **show running-config** command. The encrypted option (7) in the command supports the ASCII device configuration.

## SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config) # **scheduler aaa-authentication password** [0 | 7] *password*
3. switch(config) # **scheduler aaa-authentication username** *name* **password** [0 | 7] *password*
4. (Optional) switch(config) # **show running-config | include "scheduler aaa-authentication"**
5. (Optional) switch(config)# **copy running-config startup-config**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config) # <b>scheduler aaa-authentication password</b> [0   7] <i>password</i>	Configures a password for the user who is currently logged in.  To configure a clear text password, enter 0.  To configure an encrypted password, enter 7.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	switch(config) # <b>scheduler aaa-authentication username name password [0   7] password</b>	Configures a clear text password for a remote user.
Step 4	(Optional) switch(config) # <b>show running-config   include "scheduler aaa-authentication"</b>	Displays the scheduler password information.
Step 5	(Optional) switch(config) # <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

This example shows how to configure a clear text password for a remote user called NewUser:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config) # scheduler aaa-authentication
username NewUser password z98y76x54b
switch(config) # copy running-config startup-config
switch(config) #
```

## Defining a Job

After you define a job, you cannot modify or remove commands. To change the job, you must delete it and create a new one.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config) # **scheduler job name name**
3. switch(config-job) # **command1 ; [command2 ;command3 ; ...**
4. (Optional) switch(config-job) # **show scheduler job [name]**
5. (Optional) switch(config-job) # **copy running-config startup-config**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config) # <b>scheduler job name name</b>	Creates a job with the specified name and enters the job configuration mode.  The <i>name</i> is restricted to 31 characters.
Step 3	switch(config-job) # <b>command1 ; [command2 ;command3 ; ...</b>	Defines the sequence of commands for the specified job. Separate commands with spaces and semicolons (;).  Creates the filename using the current timestamp and switch name.
Step 4	(Optional) switch(config-job) # <b>show scheduler job [name]</b>	Displays the job information.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		The <i>name</i> is restricted to 31 characters.
<b>Step 5</b>	(Optional) switch(config-job) # <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

This example shows how to:

- Create a scheduler job named "backup-cfg"
- Save the running configuration to a file in the bootflash
- Copy the file from the bootflash to a TFTP server
- Save the change to the startup configuration

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config) # scheduler job name backup-cfg
switch(config-job) # copy running-config
tftp://1.2.3.4/${SWITCHNAME}-cfg.${TIMESTAMP} vrf management
switch(config-job) # copy running-config startup-config
```

## Deleting a Job

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config) # **no scheduler job name name**
3. (Optional) switch(config-job) # **show scheduler job [name]**
4. (Optional) switch(config-job) # **copy running-config startup-config**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config) # <b>no scheduler job name name</b>	Deletes the specified job and all commands defined within it.  The <i>name</i> is restricted to 31 characters.
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) switch(config-job) # <b>show scheduler job [name]</b>	Displays the job information.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) switch(config-job) # <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

This example shows how to delete a job called configsave:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# no scheduler job name configsave
switch(config-job)# copy running-config startup-config
switch(config-job)#
```

## Defining a Timetable

You must configure a timetable. Otherwise, jobs will not be scheduled.

If you do not specify the time for the **time** commands, the scheduler assumes the current time. For example, if the current time is March 24, 2008, 22:00 hours, jobs are started as follows:

- For the **time start 23:00 repeat 4:00:00** command, the scheduler assumes a start time of March 24, 2008, 23:00 hours.
- For the **time daily 55** command, the scheduler assumes a start time every day at 22:55 hours.
- For the **time weekly 23:00** command, the scheduler assumes a start time every Friday at 23:00 hours.
- For the **time monthly 23:00** command, the scheduler assumes a start time on the 24th of every month at 23:00 hours.



**Note** The scheduler will not begin the next occurrence of a job before the last one completes. For example, you have scheduled a job to be completed at one-minute intervals beginning at 22:00; but the job requires two minutes to complete. The scheduler starts the first job at 22:00, completes it at 22:02, and then observes a one-minute interval before starting the next job at 22:03.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config) # **scheduler schedule name** *name*
3. switch(config-schedule) # **job name** *name*
4. switch(config-schedule) # **time daily** *time*
5. switch(config-schedule) # **time weekly** *[[day-of-week:] HH:] MM*
6. switch(config-schedule) # **time monthly** *[[day-of-month:] HH:] MM*
7. switch(config-schedule) # **time start** {now **repeat** *repeat-interval* | *delta-time* [**repeat** *repeat-interval*]}
8. (Optional) switch(config-schedule) # **show scheduler config**
9. (Optional) switch(config-schedule) # **copy running-config startup-config**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config) # <b>scheduler schedule name</b> <i>name</i>	Creates a new scheduler and enters schedule configuration mode for that schedule.  The <i>name</i> is restricted to 31 characters.
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config-schedule) # <b>job name</b> <i>name</i>	Associates a job with this schedule. You can add multiple jobs to a schedule.  The <i>name</i> is restricted to 31 characters.
<b>Step 4</b>	switch(config-schedule) # <b>time daily</b> <i>time</i>	Indicates the job starts every day at a designated time, specified as HH:MM.
<b>Step 5</b>	switch(config-schedule) # <b>time weekly</b> [[ <i>day-of-week</i> :] <i>HH</i> :] <i>MM</i>	Indicates that the job starts on a specified day of the week.  The day of the week is represented by an integer (for example, <b>1</b> for Sunday, <b>2</b> for Monday) or as an abbreviation (for example, <b>sun</b> , <b>mon</b> ).  The maximum length for the entire argument is 10 characters.
<b>Step 6</b>	switch(config-schedule) # <b>time monthly</b> [[ <i>day-of-month</i> :] <i>HH</i> :] <i>MM</i>	Indicates that the job starts on a specified day each month.  If you specify 29, 30, or 31, the job is started on the last day of each month.
<b>Step 7</b>	switch(config-schedule) # <b>time start</b> { <b>now repeat</b> <i>repeat-interval</i>   <i>delta-time</i> [ <b>repeat</b> <i>repeat-interval</i> ]}	Indicates the job starts periodically.  The start-time format is [[[[ <i>yyyy</i> :] <i>mmm</i> :] <i>dd</i> :] <i>HH</i> ]: <i>MM</i> .  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>delta-time</i>— Specifies the amount of time to wait after the schedule is configured before starting a job.</li> <li>• <b>now</b>— Specifies that the job starts two minutes from now.</li> <li>• <b>repeat</b> <i>repeat-interval</i>— Specifies the frequency at which the job is repeated.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 8</b>	(Optional) switch(config-schedule) # <b>show scheduler config</b>	Displays the scheduler information.
<b>Step 9</b>	(Optional) switch(config-schedule) # <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

This example shows how to define a timetable where jobs start on the 28th of each month at 23:00 hours:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# scheduler schedule name weekendbackupqos
switch(config-scheduler)# job name offpeakzoning
```



```
switch(config-scheduler) # time monthly 28:23:00
switch(config-scheduler) # copy running-config startup-config
switch(config-scheduler) #
```

## Clearing the Scheduler Log File

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config) # **clear scheduler logfile**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config) # <b>clear scheduler logfile</b>	Clears the scheduler log file.

### Example

This example shows how to clear the scheduler log file:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config) # clear scheduler logfile
```

## Disabling the Scheduler

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config) # **no feature scheduler**
3. (Optional) switch(config) # **show scheduler config**
4. (Optional) switch(config) # **copy running-config startup-config**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config) # <b>no feature scheduler</b>	Disables the scheduler.
Step 3	(Optional) switch(config) # <b>show scheduler config</b>	Displays the scheduler configuration.
Step 4	(Optional) switch(config) # <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

This example shows how to disable the scheduler:

```

switch# configure terminal
switch(config) # no feature scheduler
switch(config) # copy running-config startup-config
switch(config) #

```

## Verifying the Scheduler Configuration

Use one of the following commands to verify the configuration:

*Table 5: Scheduler Show Commands*

Command	Purpose
<code>show scheduler config</code>	Displays the scheduler configuration.
<code>show scheduler job [name name]</code>	Displays the jobs configured.
<code>show scheduler logfile</code>	Displays the contents of the scheduler log file.
<code>show scheduler schedule [name name]</code>	Displays the schedules configured.

## Configuration Examples for the Scheduler

### Creating a Scheduler Job

This example shows how to create a scheduler job that saves the running configuration to a file in the bootflash. The job then copies the file from the bootflash to a TFTP server (creates the filename using the current timestamp and switch name):

```

switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# scheduler job name backup-cfg
switch(config-job)# copy running-config
tftp://1.2.3.4/${SWITCHNAME}-cfg.${TIMESTAMP} vrf management
switch(config-job)# end
switch(config)#

```

### Scheduling a Scheduler Job

This example shows how to schedule a scheduler job called backup-cfg to run daily at 1 a.m.:

```

switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# scheduler schedule name daily
switch(config-schedule)# job name backup-cfg
switch(config-schedule)# time daily 1:00
switch(config-schedule)# end
switch(config)#

```

## Displaying the Job Schedule

This example shows how to display the job schedule:

```
switch# show scheduler schedule
Schedule Name      : daily
-----
User Name         : admin
Schedule Type     : Run every day at 1 Hrs 00 Mins
Last Execution Time : Fri Jan 2 1:00:00 2009
Last Completion Time: Fri Jan 2 1:00:01 2009
Execution count   : 2
-----
      Job Name          Last Execution Status
-----
back-cfg                Success (0)
switch(config)#
```

## Displaying the Results of Running Scheduler Jobs

This example shows how to display the results of scheduler jobs that have been executed by the scheduler:

```
switch# show scheduler logfile
Job Name          : back-cfg                Job Status: Failed (1)
Schedule Name    : daily                  User Name : admin
Completion time: Fri Jan 1 1:00:01 2009
----- Job Output -----
`cli var name timestamp 2009-01-01-01.00.00`
`copy running-config bootflash:/$(HOSTNAME)-cfg.$(timestamp)`
`copy bootflash:/switch-cfg.2009-01-01-01.00.00 tftp://1.2.3.4/ vrf management `
copy: cannot access file '/bootflash/switch-cfg.2009-01-01-01.00.00'
=====
Job Name          : back-cfg                Job Status: Success (0)
Schedule Name    : daily                  User Name : admin
Completion time: Fri Jan 2 1:00:01 2009
----- Job Output -----
`cli var name timestamp 2009-01-02-01.00.00`
`copy running-config bootflash:/switch-cfg.2009-01-02-01.00.00`
`copy bootflash:/switch-cfg.2009--01-02-01.00.00 tftp://1.2.3.4/ vrf management `
Connection to Server Established.
[                               ] 0.50KBTrying to connect to tftp server.....
[#####] 24.50KB
TFTP put operation was successful
=====
switch#
```

## Standards for the Scheduler

No new or modified standards are supported by this feature, and support for existing standards has not been modified by this feature.





## CHAPTER 8

# Configuring SNMP

---

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [About SNMP, on page 77](#)
- [Guidelines and Limitations for SNMP, on page 81](#)
- [Default SNMP Settings, on page 81](#)
- [Configuring SNMP, on page 81](#)
- [Configuring the SNMP Local Engine ID, on page 93](#)
- [Disabling SNMP, on page 94](#)
- [Verifying the SNMP Configuration, on page 95](#)

## About SNMP

The Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) is an application-layer protocol that provides a message format for communication between SNMP managers and agents. SNMP provides a standardized framework and a common language used for the monitoring and management of devices in a network.

## SNMP Functional Overview

The SNMP framework consists of three parts:

- An SNMP manager—The system used to control and monitor the activities of network devices using SNMP.
- An SNMP agent—The software component within the managed device that maintains the data for the device and reports these data, as needed, to managing systems. The Cisco Nexus device supports the agent and MIB. To enable the SNMP agent, you must define the relationship between the manager and the agent.
- A managed information base (MIB)—The collection of managed objects on the SNMP agent



---

**Note** Cisco Nexus device does not support SNMP sets for Ethernet MIBs.

---

The Cisco Nexus device supports SNMPv1, SNMPv2c, and SNMPv3. Both SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c use a community-based form of security.

SNMP is defined in RFC 3410 (<http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc3410>), RFC 3411 (<http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc3411>), RFC 3412 (<http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc3412>), RFC 3413 (<http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc3413>), RFC 3414 (<http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc3414>), RFC 3415 (<http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc3415>), RFC 3416 (<http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc3416>), RFC 3417 (<http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc3417>), RFC 3418 (<http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc3418>), and RFC 3584 (<http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc3584>).

## SNMP Notifications

A key feature of SNMP is the ability to generate notifications from an SNMP agent. These notifications do not require that requests be sent from the SNMP manager. Notifications can indicate improper user authentication, restarts, the closing of a connection, loss of connection to a neighbor router, or other significant events.

Cisco NX-OS generates SNMP notifications as either traps or informs. A trap is an asynchronous, unacknowledged message sent from the agent to the SNMP managers listed in the host receiver table. Informs are asynchronous messages sent from the SNMP agent to the SNMP manager which the manager must acknowledge receipt of.

Traps are less reliable than informs because the SNMP manager does not send any acknowledgment when it receives a trap. The switch cannot determine if the trap was received. An SNMP manager that receives an inform request acknowledges the message with an SNMP response protocol data unit (PDU). If the Cisco Nexus device never receives a response, it can send the inform request again.

You can configure Cisco NX-OS to send notifications to multiple host receivers.

## SNMPv3

SNMPv3 provides secure access to devices by a combination of authenticating and encrypting frames over the network. The security features provided in SNMPv3 are the following:

- Message integrity—Ensures that a packet has not been tampered with in-transit.
- Authentication—Determines the message is from a valid source.
- Encryption—Scrambles the packet contents to prevent it from being seen by unauthorized sources.

SNMPv3 provides for both security models and security levels. A security model is an authentication strategy that is set up for a user and the role in which the user resides. A security level is the permitted level of security within a security model. A combination of a security model and a security level determines which security mechanism is employed when handling an SNMP packet.

## Security Models and Levels for SNMPv1, v2, and v3

The security level determines if an SNMP message needs to be protected from disclosure and if the message needs to be authenticated. The various security levels that exist within a security model are as follows:

- noAuthNoPriv—Security level that does not provide authentication or encryption. This level is not supported for SNMPv3.
- authNoPriv—Security level that provides authentication but does not provide encryption.
- authPriv—Security level that provides both authentication and encryption.

Three security models are available: SNMPv1, SNMPv2c, and SNMPv3. The security model combined with the security level determine the security mechanism applied when the SNMP message is processed.

**Table 6: SNMP Security Models and Levels**

Model	Level	Authentication	Encryption	What Happens
v1	noAuthNoPriv	Community string	No	Uses a community string match for authentication.
v2c	noAuthNoPriv	Community string	No	Uses a community string match for authentication.
v3	authNoPriv	HMAC-MD5 or HMAC-SHA	No	Provides authentication based on the Hash-Based Message Authentication Code (HMAC) Message Digest 5 (MD5) algorithm or the HMAC Secure Hash Algorithm (SHA).
v3	authPriv	HMAC-MD5 or HMAC-SHA	DES	Provides authentication based on the HMAC-MD5 or HMAC-SHA algorithms. Provides Data Encryption Standard (DES) 56-bit encryption in addition to authentication based on the Cipher Block Chaining (CBC) DES (DES-56) standard.

## User-Based Security Model

SNMPv3 User-Based Security Model (USM) refers to SNMP message-level security and offers the following services:

- Message integrity—Ensures that messages have not been altered or destroyed in an unauthorized manner and that data sequences have not been altered to an extent greater than can occur nonmaliciously.
- Message origin authentication—Confirms that the claimed identity of the user who received the data was originated.
- Message confidentiality—Ensures that information is not made available or disclosed to unauthorized individuals, entities, or processes.

SNMPv3 authorizes management operations only by configured users and encrypts SNMP messages.

Cisco NX-OS uses two authentication protocols for SNMPv3:

- HMAC-MD5-96 authentication protocol
- HMAC-SHA-96 authentication protocol

Cisco NX-OS uses Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) as one of the privacy protocols for SNMPv3 message encryption and conforms with RFC 3826.

The **priv** option offers a choice of DES or 128-bit AES encryption for SNMP security encryption. The **priv** option and the **aes-128** token indicates that this privacy password is for generating a 128-bit AES key. The AES **priv** password can have a minimum of eight characters. If the passphrases are specified in clear text, you can specify a maximum of 64 characters. If you use the localized key, you can specify a maximum of 130 characters.



---

**Note** For an SNMPv3 operation using the external AAA server, you must use AES for the privacy protocol in user configuration on the external AAA server.

---

## CLI and SNMP User Synchronization

SNMPv3 user management can be centralized at the Access Authentication and Accounting (AAA) server level. This centralized user management allows the SNMP agent in Cisco NX-OS to leverage the user authentication service of the AAA server. Once user authentication is verified, the SNMP PDUs are processed further. Additionally, the AAA server is also used to store user group names. SNMP uses the group names to apply the access/role policy that is locally available in the switch.

Any configuration changes made to the user group, role, or password results in database synchronization for both SNMP and AAA.

Cisco NX-OS synchronizes user configuration in the following ways:

- The **auth** passphrase specified in the **snmp-server user** command becomes the password for the CLI user.
- The password specified in the **username** command becomes the **auth** and **priv** passphrases for the SNMP user.
- If you create or delete a user using either SNMP or the CLI, the user is created or deleted for both SNMP and the CLI.
- User-role mapping changes are synchronized in SNMP and the CLI.
- Role changes (deletions or modifications from the CLI) are synchronized to SNMP.



---

**Note** When you configure passphrase/password in localized key/encrypted format, Cisco NX-OS does not synchronize the user information (passwords, rules, etc.).

---



## Group-Based SNMP Access



**Note** Because a group is a standard SNMP term used industry-wide, roles are referred to as groups in this SNMP section.

SNMP access rights are organized by groups. Each group in SNMP is similar to a role through the CLI. Each group is defined with three accesses: read access, write access, and notification access. Each access can be enabled or disabled within each group.

You can begin communicating with the agent once your username is created, your roles are set up by your administrator, and you are added to the roles.

## Guidelines and Limitations for SNMP

SNMP has the following configuration guidelines and limitations:

- Access control list (ACLs) can be applied only to local SNMPv3 users configured on the switch. ACLs cannot be applied to remote SNMPv3 users stored on Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting (AAA) servers.
- Cisco NX-OS supports read-only access to Ethernet MIBs. For more information, see the Cisco NX-OS MIB support list at the following URL <ftp://ftp.cisco.com/pub/mibs/supportlists/nexus3000/Nexus3000MIBSupportList.html>.
- Cisco NX-OS does not support the SNMPv3 noAuthNoPriv security level.
- Cisco Nexus 3600 series switches support upto 10000 flash files for *snmpwalk* request.

## Default SNMP Settings

*Table 7: Default SNMP Parameters*

Parameters	Default
license notifications	Enabled
linkUp/Down notification type	ietf-extended

## Configuring SNMP

### Configuring the SNMP Source Interface

You can configure SNMP to use a specific interface.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **snmp-server source-interface {inform | trap} type slot/port**
3. switch(config)# **show snmp source-interface**

**DETAILED STEPS**

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>snmp-server source-interface {inform   trap} type slot/port</b>	Configures the source interface for all SNMP packets. The following list contains the valid values for <i>interface</i> . <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ethernet</li> <li>• loopback</li> <li>• mgmt</li> <li>• port-channel</li> <li>• vlan</li> </ul>
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config)# <b>show snmp source-interface</b>	Displays the configured SNMP source interface.

**Example**

This example shows how to configure the SNMP source interface:

```
switch(config)# configure terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
switch(config)# snmp-server source-interface inform ethernet 1/10
switch(config)# snmp-server source-interface trap ethernet 1/10
switch(config)# show snmp source-interface
-----
Notification                               source-interface
-----
trap                                         Ethernet1/10
inform                                       Ethernet1/10
-----
```

## Configuring SNMP Users



**Note** The commands used to configure SNMP users in Cisco NX-OS are different from those used to configure users in Cisco IOS.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. **configure terminal**

2. switch(config)# **snmp-server user** *name* [auth {md5 | sha} *passphrase* [auto] [priv [aes-128] *passphrase*] [engineID *id*] [localizedkey]]
3. (Optional) switch# **show snmp user**
4. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b> switch# configure terminal switch(config)#	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>snmp-server user</b> <i>name</i> [auth {md5   sha} <i>passphrase</i> [auto] [priv [aes-128] <i>passphrase</i> ] [engineID <i>id</i> ] [localizedkey]]  <b>Example:</b> switch(config)# snmp-server user Admin auth sha abcd1234 priv abcdefgh	Configures an SNMP user with authentication and privacy parameters.  The passphrase can be any case-sensitive, alphanumeric string up to 64 characters.  If you use the <b>localizedkey</b> keyword, the passphrase can be any case-sensitive, alphanumeric string up to 130 characters.  The engineID format is a 12-digit, colon-separated decimal number.
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) switch# <b>show snmp user</b>  <b>Example:</b> switch(config) # show snmp user	Displays information about one or more SNMP users.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>  <b>Example:</b> switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

The following example shows how to configure an SNMP user:

```
switch# conf t
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
switch(config)# snmp-server user Admin auth sha abcd1234 priv abcdefgh
```

## Enforcing SNMP Message Encryption

You can configure SNMP to require authentication or encryption for incoming requests. By default, the SNMP agent accepts SNMPv3 messages without authentication and encryption. When you enforce privacy, Cisco NX-OS responds with an authorization error for any SNMPv3 PDU request that uses a security level parameter of either **noAuthNoPriv** or **authNoPriv**.

Use the following command in global configuration mode to enforce SNMP message encryption for a specific user:

Command	Purpose
switch(config)# <b>snmp-server user name enforcePriv</b>	Enforces SNMP message encryption for this user.

Use the following command in global configuration mode to enforce SNMP message encryption for all users:

Command	Purpose
switch(config)# <b>snmp-server globalEnforcePriv</b>	Enforces SNMP message encryption for all users.

## Assigning SNMPv3 Users to Multiple Roles

After you configure an SNMP user, you can assign multiple roles for the user.



**Note** Only users who belong to a network-admin role can assign roles to other users.

Command	Purpose
switch(config)# <b>snmp-server user name group</b>	Associates this SNMP user with the configured user role.

## Creating SNMP Communities

You can create SNMP communities for SNMPv1 or SNMPv2c.

Command	Purpose
switch(config)# <b>snmp-server community name group {ro   rw}</b>	Creates an SNMP community string.

## Filtering SNMP Requests

You can assign an access list (ACL) to a community to filter incoming SNMP requests. If the assigned ACL allows the incoming request packet, SNMP processes the request. If the ACL denies the request, SNMP drops the request and sends a system message.

Create the ACL with the following parameters:

- Source IP address
- Destination IP address
- Source port
- Destination port
- Protocol (UDP or TCP)

The ACL applies to both IPv4 and IPv6 over UDP and TCP. After creating the ACL, assign the ACL to the SNMP community.



**Tip** For more information about creating ACLs, see the NX-OS security configuration guide for the Cisco Nexus Series software that you are using.

Use the following command in global configuration mode to assign an ACL to a community to filter SNMP requests:

Command	Purpose
<pre>switch(config)# snmp-server community <i>community name</i> use-acl <i>acl-name</i></pre> <p><b>Example :</b>  <pre>switch(config)# snmp-server community public use-acl my_acl_for_public</pre></p>	Assigns an IPv4 or IPv6 ACL to an SNMP community to filter SNMP requests.

## Configuring SNMP Notification Receivers

You can configure Cisco NX-OS to generate SNMP notifications to multiple host receivers.

You can configure a host receiver for SNMPv1 traps in a global configuration mode.

Command	Purpose
<pre>switch(config)# snmp-server host <i>ip-address</i> traps version 1 <i>community</i> [<i>udp_port number</i>]</pre>	Configures a host receiver for SNMPv1 traps. The <i>ip-address</i> can be an IPv4 or IPv6 address. The community can be any alphanumeric string up to 255 characters. The UDP port number range is from 0 to 65535.

You can configure a host receiver for SNMPv2c traps or informs in a global configuration mode.

Command	Purpose
<pre>switch(config)# snmp-server host <i>ip-address</i> {traps   informs} version 2c <i>community</i> [<i>udp_port number</i>]</pre>	Configures a host receiver for SNMPv2c traps or informs. The <i>ip-address</i> can be an IPv4 or IPv6 address. The community can be any alphanumeric string up to 255 characters. The UDP port number range is from 0 to 65535.

You can configure a host receiver for SNMPv3 traps or informs in a global configuration mode.

Command	Purpose
<pre>switch(config)# snmp-server host <i>ip-address</i> {traps   informs} version 3 {auth   noauth   priv} <i>username</i> [<i>udp_port number</i>]</pre>	Configures a host receiver for SNMPv2c traps or informs. The <i>ip-address</i> can be an IPv4 or IPv6 address. The username can be any alphanumeric string up to 255 characters. The UDP port number range is from 0 to 65535.



**Note** The SNMP manager must know the user credentials (authKey/PrivKey) based on the SNMP engineID of the Cisco Nexus device to authenticate and decrypt the SNMPv3 messages.

The following example shows how to configure a host receiver for an SNMPv1 trap:

```
switch(config)# snmp-server host 192.0.2.1 traps version 1 public
```

The following example shows how to configure a host receiver for an SNMPv2 inform:

```
switch(config)# snmp-server host 192.0.2.1 informs version 2c public
```

The following example shows how to configure a host receiver for an SNMPv3 inform:

```
switch(config)# snmp-server host 192.0.2.1 informs version 3 auth NMS
```

## Configuring SNMP Notification Receivers with VRFs

You can configure Cisco NX-OS to use a configured VRF to reach the host receiver. SNMP adds entries into the cExtSnmpTargetVrfTable of the CISCO-SNMP-TARGET-EXT-MIB when you configure the VRF reachability and filtering options for an SNMP notification receiver.



**Note** You must configure the host before configuring the VRF reachability or filtering options.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch# **snmp-server host ip-address use-vrf vrf\_name [udp\_port number]**
3. (Optional) switch(config)# **copy running-config startup-config**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch# <b>snmp-server host ip-address use-vrf vrf_name [udp_port number]</b>	Configures SNMP to use the selected VRF to communicate with the host receiver. The IP address can be an IPv4 or IPv6 address. The VRF name can be any alphanumeric string up to 255 characters. The UDP port number range is from 0 to 65535. This command adds an entry into the ExtSnmpTargetVrfTable of the CISCO-SNMP-TARGET-EXT-MB.
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

**Example**

The following example shows how to configure the SNMP server host with IP address 192.0.2.1 to use the VRF named "Blue:"

```
switch# configuration terminal
switch(config)# snmp-server host 192.0.2.1 use-vrf Blue
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
```

## Filtering SNMP Notifications Based on a VRF

You can configure Cisco NX-OS filter notifications based on the VRF in which the notification occurred.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **snmp-server host ip-address filter-vrf vrf\_name [udp\_port number]**
3. (Optional) switch(config)# **copy running-config startup-config**

**DETAILED STEPS**

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>snmp-server host ip-address filter-vrf vrf_name [udp_port number]</b>	Filters notifications to the notification host receiver based on the configured VRF. The IP address can be an IPv4 or IPv6 address. The VRF name can be any alphanumeric string up to 255 characters. The UDP port number range is from 0 to 65535.  This command adds an entry into the ExtSnmpTargetVrfTable of the CISCO-SNMP-TARGET-EXT-MB.
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

**Example**

The following example shows how to configure filtering of SNMP notifications based on a VRF:

```
switch# configuration terminal
switch(config)# snmp-server host 192.0.2.1 filter-vrf Red
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
```

## Configuring SNMP for Inband Access

You can configure SNMP for inband access using the following:

- Using SNMP v2 without context—You can use a community that is mapped to a context. In this case, the SNMP client does not need to know about the context.
- Using SNMP v2 with context—The SNMP client needs to specify the context by specifying a community; for example, <community>@<context>.
- Using SNMP v3—You can specify the context.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. switch# **configuration terminal**
2. switch(config)# **snmp-server context** *context-name* **vrf** *vrf-name*
3. switch(config)# **snmp-server community** *community-name* **group** *group-name*
4. switch(config)# **snmp-server mib community-map** *community-name* **context** *context-name*

**DETAILED STEPS**

	<b>Command or Action</b>	<b>Purpose</b>
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configuration terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>snmp-server context</b> <i>context-name</i> <b>vrf</b> <i>vrf-name</i>	Maps an SNMP context to the management VRF or default VRF. Custom VRFs are not supported.  The names can be any alphanumeric string up to 32 characters.
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config)# <b>snmp-server community</b> <i>community-name</i> <b>group</b> <i>group-name</i>	Maps an SNMPv2c community to an SNMP context and identifies the group to which the community belongs. The names can be any alphanumeric string up to 32 characters.
<b>Step 4</b>	switch(config)# <b>snmp-server mib community-map</b> <i>community-name</i> <b>context</b> <i>context-name</i>	Maps an SNMPv2c community to an SNMP context. The names can be any alphanumeric string up to 32 characters.

**Example**

The following SNMPv2 example shows how to map a community named snmpdefault to a context:

```
switch# conf t
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
switch(config)# snmp-server context def vrf default
switch(config)# snmp-server community snmpdefault group network-admin
switch(config)# snmp-server mib community-map snmpdefault context def
switch(config)#
```

The following SNMPv2 example shows how to configure and inband access to the community comm which is not mapped:

```
switch# conf t
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
switch(config)# snmp-server context def vrf default
switch(config)# snmp-server community comm group network-admin
switch(config)#
```

The following SNMPv3 example shows how to use a v3 username and password:



```
switch# config t
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
switch(config)# snmp-server context def vrf default
switch(config)#
```

## Enabling SNMP Notifications

You can enable or disable notifications. If you do not specify a notification name, Cisco NX-OS enables all notifications.



**Note** The **snmp-server enable traps** CLI command enables both traps and informs, depending on the configured notification host receivers.

The following table lists the CLI commands that enable the notifications for Cisco NX-OS MIBs.

**Table 8: Enabling SNMP Notifications**

MIB	Related Commands
All notifications	<b>snmp-server enable traps</b>
CISCO-ERR-DISABLE-MIB	<b>snmp-server enable traps show interface status</b>
Q-BRIDGE-MIB	<b>snmp-server enable traps show mac address-table</b>
CISCO-SWITCH-QOS-MIB	<b>snmp-server enable traps show hardware internal buffer info pkt-stats</b>
BRIDGE-MIB	<b>snmp-server enable traps bridge newroot</b> <b>snmp-server enable traps bridge topologychange</b>
CISCO-AAA-SERVER-MIB	<b>snmp-server enable traps aaa</b>
ENTITY-MIB, CISCO-ENTITY-FRU-CONTROL-MIB, CISCO-ENTITY-SENSOR-MIB	<b>snmp-server enable traps entity</b> <b>snmp-server enable traps entity fru</b>
CISCO-LICENSE-MGR-MIB	<b>snmp-server enable traps license</b>
IF-MIB	<b>snmp-server enable traps link</b>
CISCO-PSM-MIB	<b>snmp-server enable traps port-security</b>
SNMPv2-MIB	<b>snmp-server enable traps snmp</b> <b>snmp-server enable traps snmp authentication</b>
CISCO-FCC-MIB	<b>snmp-server enable traps fcc</b>
CISCO-DM-MIB	<b>snmp-server enable traps fcdomain</b>
CISCO-NS-MIB	<b>snmp-server enable traps fcns</b>

MIB	Related Commands
CISCO-FCS-MIB	<b>snmp-server enable traps fcs discovery-complete</b> <b>snmp-server enable traps fcs request-reject</b>
CISCO-FDMI-MIB	<b>snmp-server enable traps fdmi</b>
CISCO-FSPF-MIB	<b>snmp-server enable traps fspf</b>
CISCO-PSM-MIB	<b>snmp-server enable traps port-security</b>
CISCO-RSCN-MIB	<b>snmp-server enable traps rscn</b> <b>snmp-server enable traps rscn els</b> <b>snmp-server enable traps rscn ils</b>
CISCO-ZS-MIB	<b>snmp-server enable traps zone</b> <b>snmp-server enable traps zone default-zone-behavior-change</b> <b>snmp-server enable traps zone enhanced-zone-db-change</b> <b>snmp-server enable traps zone merge-failure</b> <b>snmp-server enable traps zone merge-success</b> <b>snmp-server enable traps zone request-reject</b> <b>snmp-server enable traps zone unsupp-mem</b>
CISCO-CONFIG-MAN-MIB <b>Note</b> Supports no MIB objects except the following notification: ccmCLIRunningConfigChanged	<b>snmp-server enable traps config</b>



**Note** The license notifications are enabled by default.

To enable the specified notification in the global configuration mode, perform one of the following tasks:

Command	Purpose
switch(config)# <b>snmp-server enable traps</b>	Enables all SNMP notifications.
switch(config)# <b>snmp-server enable traps aaa</b> [ <b>server-state-change</b> ]	Enables the AAA SNMP notifications.
switch(config)# <b>snmp-server enable traps entity</b> [fru]	Enables the ENTITY-MIB SNMP notifications.
switch(config)# <b>snmp-server enable traps license</b>	Enables the license SNMP notification.
switch(config)# <b>snmp-server enable traps port-security</b>	Enables the port security SNMP notifications.
switch(config)# <b>snmp-server enable traps snmp</b> [ <b>authentication</b> ]	Enables the SNMP agent notifications.

## Configuring Link Notifications

You can configure which linkUp/linkDown notifications to enable on a device. You can enable the following types of linkUp/linkDown notifications:

- `cieLinkDown`—Enables the Cisco extended link state down notification.
- `cieLinkUp`—Enables the Cisco extended link state up notification.
- `cisco-xcvr-mon-status-chg`—Enables the Cisco interface transceiver monitor status change notification.
- `delayed-link-state-change`—Enables the delayed link state change.
- `extended-linkUp`—Enables the Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) extended link state up notification.
- `extended-linkDown`—Enables the IETF extended link state down notification.
- `linkDown`—Enables the IETF Link state down notification.
- `linkUp`—Enables the IETF Link state up notification.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **snmp-server enable traps link [cieLinkDown | cieLinkUp | cisco-xcvr-mon-status-chg | delayed-link-state-change] | extended-linkUp | extended-linkDown | linkDown | linkUp]**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch# configure terminal switch(config)#</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	<b>snmp-server enable traps link [cieLinkDown   cieLinkUp   cisco-xcvr-mon-status-chg   delayed-link-state-change]   extended-linkUp   extended-linkDown   linkDown   linkUp]</b>  <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config)# snmp-server enable traps link cieLinkDown</pre>	Enables the link SNMP notifications.

## Disabling Link Notifications on an Interface

You can disable linkUp and linkDown notifications on an individual interface. You can use these limit notifications on a flapping interface (an interface that transitions between up and down repeatedly).

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **switch# configure terminal**

2. switch(config)# **interface** *type slot/port*
3. switch(config-if)# **no snmp trap link-status**

#### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>interface</b> <i>type slot/port</i>	Specifies the interface to be changed.
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config-if)# <b>no snmp trap link-status</b>	Disables SNMP link-state traps for the interface. This feature is enabled by default.

## Enabling One-Time Authentication for SNMP over TCP

You can enable a one-time authentication for SNMP over a TCP session.

Command	Purpose
switch(config)# <b>snmp-server tcp-session</b> [ <b>auth</b> ]	Enables a one-time authentication for SNMP over a TCP session. This feature is disabled by default.

## Assigning SNMP Switch Contact and Location Information

You can assign the switch contact information, which is limited to 32 characters (without spaces), and the switch location.

#### SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configuration terminal**
2. switch(config)# **snmp-server contact** *name*
3. switch(config)# **snmp-server location** *name*
4. (Optional) switch# **show snmp**
5. (Optional) switch# **copy running-config startup-config**

#### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configuration terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>snmp-server contact</b> <i>name</i>	Configures sysContact, the SNMP contact name.
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config)# <b>snmp-server location</b> <i>name</i>	Configures sysLocation, the SNMP location.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) switch# <b>show snmp</b>	Displays information about one or more destination profiles.
<b>Step 5</b>	(Optional) switch# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves this configuration change.

## Configuring the Context to Network Entity Mapping

You can configure an SNMP context to map to a logical network entity, such as a protocol instance or VRF.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configuration terminal**
2. switch(config)# **snmp-server context** *context-name* [**instance** *instance-name*] [**vrf** *vrf-name*] [**topology** *topology-name*]
3. switch(config)# **snmp-server mib community-map** *community-name* **context** *context-name*
4. (Optional) switch(config)# **no snmp-server context** *context-name* [**instance** *instance-name*] [**vrf** *vrf-name*] [**topology** *topology-name*]

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# <b>configuration terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# <b>snmp-server context</b> <i>context-name</i> [ <b>instance</b> <i>instance-name</i> ] [ <b>vrf</b> <i>vrf-name</i> ] [ <b>topology</b> <i>topology-name</i> ]	Maps an SNMP context to a protocol instance, VRF, or topology. The names can be any alphanumeric string up to 32 characters.
Step 3	switch(config)# <b>snmp-server mib community-map</b> <i>community-name</i> <b>context</b> <i>context-name</i>	Maps an SNMPv2c community to an SNMP context. The names can be any alphanumeric string up to 32 characters.
Step 4	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>no snmp-server context</b> <i>context-name</i> [ <b>instance</b> <i>instance-name</i> ] [ <b>vrf</b> <i>vrf-name</i> ] [ <b>topology</b> <i>topology-name</i> ]	Deletes the mapping between an SNMP context and a protocol instance, VRF, or topology. The names can be any alphanumeric string up to 32 characters.  <b>Note</b> Do not enter an instance, VRF, or topology to delete a context mapping. If you use the <b>instance</b> , <b>vrf</b> , or <b>topology</b> keywords, you configure a mapping between the context and a zero-length string.

## Configuring the SNMP Local Engine ID

Beginning with Cisco NX-OS Release 7.0(3)F3(1), you can configure the engine ID on a local device.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **snmp-server engineID local** *engineid-string*
3. **show snmp engineID**
4. [**no**] **snmp-server engineID local** *engineid-string*
5. **copy running-config startup-config**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> switch# configure terminal switch(config)#	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>snmp-server engineID local <i>engineid-string</i></b> <b>Example:</b> switch(config)# snmp-server engineID local AA:BB:CC:1A:2C:10	Changes the SNMP engineID of the local device.  The local engine ID should be configured as a list of colon-specified hexadecimal octets, where there are even number of hexadecimal characters that range from 10 to 64 and every two hexadecimal characters are separated by a colon. For example, i80:00:02:b8:04:61:62:63.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>show snmp engineID</b> <b>Example:</b> switch(config)# show snmp engineID	Displays the identification of the configured SNMP engine.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>[no] snmp-server engineID local <i>engineid-string</i></b> <b>Example:</b> switch(config)# no snmp-server engineID local AA:BB:CC:1A:2C:10	Disables the local engine ID and the default auto-generated engine ID is configured.
<b>Step 5</b>	Required: <b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b> switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

# Disabling SNMP

## SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **switch(config) # no snmp-server protocol enable**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> switch# configure terminal switch(config)#	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>switch(config) # no snmp-server protocol enable</b> <b>Example:</b>	Disables SNMP.  SNMP is disabled by default.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	no snmp-server protocol enable	

## Verifying the SNMP Configuration

To display SNMP configuration information, perform one of the following tasks:

Command	Purpose
show snmp	Displays the SNMP status.
show snmp community	Displays the SNMP community strings.
show interface snmp-ifindex	Displays the SNMP ifIndex value for all interfaces (from IF-MIB).
show running-config snmp [all]	Displays the SNMP running configuration.
show snmp engineID	Displays the SNMP engineID.
show snmp group	Displays SNMP roles.
show snmp sessions	Displays SNMP sessions.
show snmp context	Displays the SNMP context mapping.
show snmp host	Displays information about configured SNMP hosts.
show snmp source-interface	Displays information about configured source interfaces.
show snmp trap	Displays the SNMP notifications enabled or disabled.
show snmp user	Displays SNMPv3 users.







## CHAPTER 9

# Using the PCAP SNMP Parser

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [Using the PCAP SNMP Parser, on page 97](#)

## Using the PCAP SNMP Parser

The PCAP SNMP parser is a tool to analyze SNMP packets captured in .pcap format. It runs on the switch and generates a statistics report for all of the SNMP get, getnext, getbulk, set, trap, and response requests sent to the switch.

To use the PCAP SNMP parser, use one of the following commands:

- **debug packet-analysis snmp [mgmt0 | inband] duration *seconds* [*output-file*] [keep-pcap]**—Captures packets for a specified number of seconds using Tshark, saves them in a temporary .pcap file, and then analyzes them based on this .pcap file.

The results are saved in the output file or printed to the console, if the output file is not specified. The temporary .pcap file is deleted by default, unless you use the **keep-pcap** option. Packet capture can be performed on the management interface (mgmt0), which is the default, or the inband interface.

### Examples:

```
switch# debug packet-analysis snmp duration 100

switch# debug packet-analysis snmp duration 100 bootflash:snmp_stats.log

switch# debug packet-analysis snmp duration 100 bootflash:snmp_stats.log keep-pcap

switch# debug packet-analysis snmp inband duration 100

switch# debug packet-analysis snmp inband duration 100 bootflash:snmp_stats.log

switch# debug packet-analysis snmp inband duration 100 bootflash:snmp_stats.log keep-pcap
```

- **debug packet-analysis snmp *input-pcap-file* [*output-file*]**—Analyzes the captured packets on an existing .pcap file.

### Examples:

```
switch# debug packet-analysis snmp bootflash:snmp.pcap
```

```
switch# debug packet-analysis snmp bootflash:snmp.pcap bootflash:snmp_stats.log
```

The following example shows a sample statistics report for the **debug packet-analysis snmp [mgmt0 | inband] duration** command:

```
switch# debug packet-analysis snmp duration 10
Capturing on eth0
36
wireshark-cisco-mtc-dissector: ethertype=0xde09, devicetype=0x0
wireshark-broadcom-rcpu-dissector: ethertype=0xde08, devicetype=0x0

Started analyzing. It may take several minutes, please wait!

Statistics Report
-----
SNMP Packet Capture Duration: 0 seconds
Total Hosts: 1
Total Requests: 18
Total Responses: 18
Total GET: 0
Total GETNEXT: 0
Total WALK: 1 (NEXT: 18)
Total GETBULK: 0
Total BULKWALK: 0 (BULK: 0)
Total SET: 0
Total TRAP: 0
Total INFORM: 0

Hosts          GET  GETNEXT  WALK(NEXT)  GETBULK  BULKWALK(BULK)  SET  TRAP  INFORM  RESPONSE
-----
10.22.27.244  0      0          1(18)       0         0(0)            0    0      0        18

Sessions
-----
1

MIB Objects GET  GETNEXT  WALK(NEXT)  GETBULK(Non_rep/Max_rep)  BULKWALK(BULK, Non_rep/Max_rep)
-----
ifName      0      0          1(18)       0         0

SET      Hosts
-----
0        10.22.27.244
```



## CHAPTER 10

# Configuring RMON

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [Information About RMON, on page 99](#)
- [Configuration Guidelines and Limitations for RMON, on page 100](#)
- [Verifying the RMON Configuration, on page 100](#)
- [Default RMON Settings, on page 101](#)
- [Configuring RMON Alarms, on page 101](#)
- [Configuring RMON Events, on page 102](#)

## Information About RMON

RMON is an Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) standard monitoring specification that allows various network agents and console systems to exchange network monitoring data. The Cisco NX-OS supports RMON alarms, events, and logs to monitor Cisco Nexus devices.

An RMON alarm monitors a specific management information base (MIB) object for a specified interval, triggers an alarm at a specified threshold value (threshold), and resets the alarm at another threshold value. You can use alarms with RMON events to generate a log entry or an SNMP notification when the RMON alarm triggers.

RMON is disabled by default and no events or alarms are configured in Cisco Nexus devices. You can configure your RMON alarms and events by using the CLI or an SNMP-compatible network management station.

## RMON Alarms

You can set an alarm on any MIB object that resolves into an SNMP INTEGER type. The specified object must be an existing SNMP MIB object in standard dot notation (for example, 1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.17 represents ifOutOctets.17).

When you create an alarm, you specify the following parameters:

- MIB object to monitor
- Sampling interval—The interval that the Cisco Nexus device uses to collect a sample value of the MIB object.
- Sample type—Absolute samples take the current snapshot of the MIB object value. Delta samples take two consecutive samples and calculate the difference between them.

- Rising threshold—The value at which the Cisco Nexus device triggers a rising alarm or resets a falling alarm.
- Falling threshold—The value at which the Cisco Nexus device triggers a falling alarm or resets a rising alarm.
- Events—The action that the Cisco Nexus device takes when an alarm (rising or falling) triggers.




---

**Note** Use the `hcalarms` option to set an alarm on a 64-bit integer MIB object.

---

For example, you can set a delta type rising alarm on an error counter MIB object. If the error counter delta exceeds this value, you can trigger an event that sends an SNMP notification and logs the rising alarm event. This rising alarm does not occur again until the delta sample for the error counter drops below the falling threshold.




---

**Note** The falling threshold must be less than the rising threshold.

---

## RMON Events

You can associate a particular event to each RMON alarm. RMON supports the following event types:

- SNMP notification—Sends an SNMP risingAlarm or fallingAlarm notification when the associated alarm triggers.
- Log—Adds an entry in the RMON log table when the associated alarm triggers.
- Both—Sends an SNMP notification and adds an entry in the RMON log table when the associated alarm triggers.

You can specify a different even for a falling alarm and a rising alarm.

## Configuration Guidelines and Limitations for RMON

RMON has the following configuration guidelines and limitations:

- You must configure an SNMP user and a notification receiver to use the SNMP notification event type.
- You can only configure an RMON alarm on a MIB object that resolves to an integer.

## Verifying the RMON Configuration

Use the following commands to verify the RMON configuration information:

Command	Purpose
<code>show rmon alarms</code>	Displays information about RMON alarms.

Command	Purpose
<b>show rmon events</b>	Displays information about RMON events.
<b>show rmon hcalarms</b>	Displays information about RMON hcalarms.
<b>show rmon logs</b>	Displays information about RMON logs.

## Default RMON Settings

The following table lists the default settings for RMON parameters.

*Table 9: Default RMON Parameters*

Parameters	Default
Alarms	None configured.
Events	None configured.

## Configuring RMON Alarms

You can configure RMON alarms on any integer-based SNMP MIB object.

You can optionally specify the following parameters:

- The eventnumber to trigger if the rising or falling threshold exceeds the specified limit.
- The owner of the alarm.

Ensure you have configured an SNMP user and enabled SNMP notifications.

### Before you begin

Ensure you have configured an SNMP user and enabled SNMP notifications.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **rmon alarm** *index mib-object sample-interval* {**absolute** | **delta**} **rising-threshold** *value* [*event-index*] **falling-threshold** *value* [*event-index*] [**owner name**]
3. switch(config)# **rmon hcalarm** *index mib-object sample-interval* {**absolute** | **delta**} **rising-threshold-high** *value* **rising-threshold-low** *value* [*event-index*] **falling-threshold-high** *value* **falling-threshold-low** *value* [*event-index*] [**owner name**] [**storagetype type**]
4. (Optional) switch# **show rmon** {**alarms** | **hcalarms**}
5. (Optional) switch# **copy running-config startup-config**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>rmon alarm</b> <i>index mib-object sample-interval</i> {absolute   delta} <b>rising-threshold</b> <i>value</i> [ <i>event-index</i> ] <b>falling-threshold</b> <i>value</i> [ <i>event-index</i> ] [ <b>owner name</b> ]	Creates an RMON alarm. The value range is from –2147483647 to 2147483647. The owner name can be any alphanumeric string.
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config)# <b>rmon hcalarm</b> <i>index mib-object sample-interval</i> {absolute   delta} <b>rising-threshold-high</b> <i>value</i> <b>rising-threshold-low</b> <i>value</i> [ <i>event-index</i> ] <b>falling-threshold-high</b> <i>value</i> <b>falling-threshold-low</b> <i>value</i> [ <i>event-index</i> ] [ <b>owner name</b> ] [ <b>storage</b> <i>type type</i> ]	Creates an RMON high-capacity alarm. The value range is from –2147483647 to 2147483647. The owner name can be any alphanumeric string. The storage type range is from 1 to 5.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) switch# <b>show rmon</b> {alarms   hcalarms}	Displays information about RMON alarms or high-capacity alarms.
<b>Step 5</b>	(Optional) switch# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves this configuration change.

**Example**

The following example shows how to configure RMON alarms:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# rmon alarm 1 1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.17.83886080 5 delta rising-threshold 5 1
falling-threshold 0 owner test
switch(config)# exit
switch# show rmon alarms
Alarm 1 is active, owned by test
Monitors 1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.17.83886080 every 5 second(s)
Taking delta samples, last value was 0
Rising threshold is 5, assigned to event 1
Falling threshold is 0, assigned to event 0
On startup enable rising or falling alarm
```

## Configuring RMON Events

You can configure RMON events to associate with RMON alarms. You can reuse the same event with multiple RMON alarms.

Ensure you have configured an SNMP user and enabled SNMP notifications.

**Before you begin**

Ensure that you have configured an SNMP user and enabled SNMP notifications.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **rmon event** *index* [*description string*] [**log**] [**trap**] [*owner name*]
3. (Optional) switch(config)# **show rmon** {**alarms** | **hcalarms**}
4. (Optional) switch# **copy running-config startup-config**

**DETAILED STEPS**

	<b>Command or Action</b>	<b>Purpose</b>
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>rmon event</b> <i>index</i> [ <i>description string</i> ] [ <b>log</b> ] [ <b>trap</b> ] [ <i>owner name</i> ]	Configures an RMON event. The description string and owner name can be any alphanumeric string.
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>show rmon</b> { <b>alarms</b>   <b>hcalarms</b> }	Displays information about RMON alarms or high-capacity alarms.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) switch# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves this configuration change.







# CHAPTER 11

## Configuring Online Diagnostics

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [Information About Online Diagnostics, on page 105](#)
- [Guidelines and Limitations for Online Diagnostics, on page 107](#)
- [Configuring Online Diagnostics, on page 107](#)
- [Verifying the Online Diagnostics Configuration, on page 108](#)
- [Default Settings for Online Diagnostics, on page 108](#)

### Information About Online Diagnostics

Online diagnostics provide verification of hardware components during switch bootup or reset, and they monitor the health of the hardware during normal switch operation.

Cisco Nexus 3600 platform switches support bootup diagnostics and runtime diagnostics. Bootup diagnostics include disruptive tests and nondisruptive tests that run during system bootup and system reset.

Runtime diagnostics (also known as health monitoring diagnostics) include nondisruptive tests that run in the background during normal operation of the switch.

### Bootup Diagnostics

Bootup diagnostics detect faulty hardware before bringing the switch online. Bootup diagnostics also check the data path and control path connectivity between the supervisor and the ASICs. The following table describes the diagnostics that are run only during switch bootup or reset.

**Table 10: Bootup Diagnostics**

Diagnostic	Description
PCIe	Tests PCI express (PCIe) access.
NVRAM	Verifies the integrity of the NVRAM.
In band port	Tests connectivity of the inband port to the supervisor.
Management port	Tests the management port.

Diagnostic	Description
Memory	Verifies the integrity of the DRAM.

Bootup diagnostics also include a set of tests that are common with health monitoring diagnostics.

Bootup diagnostics log any failures to the onboard failure logging (OBFL) system. Failures also trigger an LED display to indicate diagnostic test states (on, off, pass, or fail).

You can configure Cisco Nexus devices to either bypass the bootup diagnostics or run the complete set of bootup diagnostics.

## Health Monitoring Diagnostics

Health monitoring diagnostics provide information about the health of the switch. They detect runtime hardware errors, memory errors, software faults, and resource exhaustion.

Health monitoring diagnostics are nondisruptive and run in the background to ensure the health of a switch that is processing live network traffic.

## Expansion Module Diagnostics

During the switch bootup or reset, the bootup diagnostics include tests for the in-service expansion modules in the switch.

When you insert an expansion module into a running switch, a set of diagnostics tests are run. The following table describes the bootup diagnostics for an expansion module. These tests are common with the bootup diagnostics. If the bootup diagnostics fail, the expansion module is not placed into service.

**Table 11: Expansion Module Bootup and Health Monitoring Diagnostics**

Diagnostic	Description
SPROM	Verifies the integrity of backplane and supervisor SPROMs.
Fabric engine	Tests the switch fabric ASICs.
Fabric port	Tests the ports on the switch fabric ASIC.
Forwarding engine	Tests the forwarding engine ASICs.
Forwarding engine port	Tests the ports on the forwarding engine ASICs.
Front port	Tests the components (such as PHY and MAC) on the front ports.

Health monitoring diagnostics are run on in-service expansion modules. The following table describes the additional tests that are specific to health monitoring diagnostics for expansion modules.

**Table 12: Expansion Module Health Monitoring Diagnostics**

Diagnostic	Description
LED	Monitors port and system status LEDs.

Diagnostic	Description
Temperature Sensor	Monitors temperature sensor readings.

## Guidelines and Limitations for Online Diagnostics

Online diagnostics has the following configuration guidelines and limitations:

- You cannot run disruptive online diagnostic tests on demand.
- The BootupPortLoopback test is not supported.
- Interface Rx and Tx packet counters are incremented (approximately four packets every 15 minutes) for ports in the shutdown state.
- On admin down ports, the unicast packet Rx and Tx counters are incremented for GOLD loopback packets. The PortLoopback test is on demand, so the packet counter is incremented only when you run the test on admin down ports.

## Configuring Online Diagnostics

You can configure the bootup diagnostics to run the complete set of tests, or you can bypass all bootup diagnostic tests for a faster module boot up time.



**Note** We recommend that you set the bootup online diagnostics level to complete. We do not recommend bypassing the bootup online diagnostics.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **diagnostic bootup level [complete | bypass]**
3. (Optional) switch# **show diagnostic bootup level**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>diagnostic bootup level [complete   bypass]</b>	Configures the bootup diagnostic level to trigger diagnostics when the device boots, as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>complete</b>—Performs all bootup diagnostics. This is the default value.</li> <li>• <b>bypass</b>—Does not perform any bootup diagnostics.</li> </ul>

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) switch# <b>show diagnostic bootup level</b>	Displays the bootup diagnostic level (bypass or complete) that is currently in place on the switch.

### Example

The following example shows how to configure the bootup diagnostics level to trigger the complete diagnostics:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# diagnostic bootup level complete
```

## Verifying the Online Diagnostics Configuration

Use the following commands to verify online diagnostics configuration information:

Command	Purpose
<b>show diagnostic bootup level</b>	Displays the bootup diagnostics level.
<b>show diagnostic result module slot</b>	Displays the results of the diagnostics tests.

## Default Settings for Online Diagnostics

The following table lists the default settings for online diagnostics parameters.

*Table 13: Default Online Diagnostics Parameters*

Parameters	Default
Bootup diagnostics level	complete



## CHAPTER 12

# Configuring the Embedded Event Manager

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [About Embedded Event Manager, on page 109](#)
- [Configuring Embedded Event Manager, on page 113](#)
- [Verifying the Embedded Event Manager Configuration, on page 140](#)
- [Configuration Examples for Embedded Event Manager, on page 141](#)
- [Additional References, on page 142](#)

## About Embedded Event Manager

The ability to detect and handle critical events in the Cisco NX-OS system is important for high availability. The Embedded Event Manager (EEM) provides a central, policy-driven framework to detect and handle events in the system by monitoring events that occur on your device and taking action to recover or troubleshoot these events, based on your configuration..

EEM consists of three major components:

### Event statements

Events to monitor from another Cisco NX-OS component that may require some action, workaround, or notification.

### Action statements

An action that EEM can take, such as sending an e-mail or disabling an interface, to recover from an event.

### Policies

An event paired with one or more actions to troubleshoot or recover from the event.

Without EEM, each individual component is responsible for detecting and handling its own events. For example, if a port flaps frequently, the policy of "putting it into errDisable state" is built into ETHPM.

## Embedded Event Manager Policies

An EEM policy consists of an event statement and one or more action statements. The event statement defines the event to look for as well as the filtering characteristics for the event. The action statement defines the action EEM takes when the event occurs.

For example, you can configure an EEM policy to identify when a card is removed from the device and log the details related to the card removal. By setting up an event statement that tells the system to look for all instances of card removal and an then with an action statement that tells the system to log the details.

You can configure EEM policies using the command line interface (CLI) or a VSH script.

EEM gives you a device-wide view of policy management. Once EEM policies are configured, the corresponding actions are triggered. All actions (system or user-configured) for triggered events are tracked and maintained by the system.

### Preconfigured System Policies

Cisco NX-OS has a number of preconfigured system policies. These system policies define many common events and actions for the device. System policy names begin with two underscore characters (\_\_\_).

Some system policies can be overridden. In these cases, you can configure overrides for either the event or the action. The overrides that you configure take the place of the system policy.




---

**Note** Override policies must include an event statement. Override policies without event statements override all possible events for the system policy.

---

To view the preconfigured system polices and determine which polices you can override, use the **show event manager system-policy** command.

### User-Created Policies

User-created policies allow you to customize EEM policies for your network. If a user policy is created for an event, actions in the policy are triggered only after EEM triggers the system policy actions related to the same event.

### Log Files

The log file that contains data that is related to EEM policy matches is maintained in the event\_archive\_1 log file located in the /log/event\_archive\_1 directory.

## Event Statements

Any device activity for which some action, such as a workaround or notification, is taken is considered an event by EEM. In many cases, events are related to faults in the device, such as when an interface or a fan malfunctions.

Event statements specify which event or events triggers a policy to run.




---

**Tip** You can configure EEM to trigger an EEM policy that is based on a combination of events by creating and differentiating multiple EEM events in the policy and then defining a combination of events to trigger a custom action.

---

EEM defines event filters so that only critical events or multiple occurrences of an event within a specified time period trigger an associated action.

Some commands or internal events trigger other commands internally. These commands are not visible, but will still match the event specification that triggers an action. You cannot prevent these commands from triggering an action, but you can check which event triggered an action.

### Supported Events

EEM supports the following events in event statements:

- Counter events
- Fan absent events
- Fan bad events
- Memory thresholds events
- Events being used in overridden system policies.
- SNMP notification events
- Syslog events
- System manager events
- Temperature events
- Track events

## Action Statements

Action statements describe the action that is triggered by a policy when an event occurs. Each policy can have multiple action statements. If no action is associated with a policy, EEM still observes events but takes no actions.

In order for triggered events to process default actions, you must configure the EEM policy to allow the default action. For example, if you match a CLI command in a match statement, you must add the event-default action statement to the EEM policy or EEM does not allow the command to execute.



---

**Note** When configuring action statements within your user policy or overriding policy, it is important that you confirm that action statements do not negate each other or adversely affect the associated system policy.

---

### Supported Actions

EEM supports the following actions in action statements:

- Execute any CLI commands
- Update a counter
- Reload the device
- Generate a syslog message
- Generate an SNMP notification

- Use the default action for the system policy

## VSH Script Policies

You can write policies in a VSH script, by using a text editor. Policies that are written using a VSH script have an event statement and action statement(s) just as other policies, and these policies can either augment or override system policies.

After you define your VSH script policy, copy it to the device and activate it.

## Licensing Requirements for Embedded Event Manager

This feature does not require a license. Any feature not included in a license package is bundled with the Cisco NX-OS system images and is provided at no extra charge to you. For a complete explanation of the Cisco NX-OS licensing scheme, see the *Cisco NX-OS Licensing Guide*.

## Prerequisites for Embedded Event Manager

You must have network-admin privileges to configure EEM.

## Guidelines and Limitations for Embedded Event Manager

When you plan your EEM configuration, consider the following:

- The maximum number of configurable EEM policies is 500.
- Action statements within your user policy or overriding policy should not negate each other or adversely affect the associated system policy.
- To allow a triggered event to process any default actions, you must configure the EEM policy to allow the default action. For example, if you match a command in a match statement, you must add the event-default action statement to the EEM policy or EEM does not allow the command to execute.
- The following guidelines apply to Event Log Auto-Collection and Backup:
  - By default, enabled log collection on a switch provides between 15 minutes to several hours of event logs depending on size, scale and component activity.
  - To be able to collect relevant logs that span a longer period, only enable event log retention for the specific services/features you need. See "Enabling Extended Log File Retention For a Single Service". You can also export the internal event logs. See "External Log File Storage".
  - When troubleshooting, it is good practice to manually collect a snapshot of internal event logs in real time. See "Generating a Local Copy of Recent Log Files".
- An override policy that consists of an event statement and no action statement triggers no action and no notification of failures.
- An override policy without an event statement overrides all possible events in the system policy.
- In regular command expressions: all keywords must be expanded, and only the asterisk (\*) symbol can be used for replace the arguments.



- EEM event correlation supports up to four event statements in a single policy. The event types can be the same or different, but only these event types are supported: cli, counter, snmp, syslog, and track.
- When more than one event statement is included in an EEM policy, each event statement must have a **tag** keyword with a unique tag argument.
- EEM event correlation does not override the system default policies.
- Default action execution is not supported for policies that are configured with tagged events.
- If your event specification matches a CLI pattern, you can use SSH-style wild card characters.  
For example, if you want to match all show commands, enter the **show \*** command. Entering the **show .\*** command does not work.
- If your event specification is a regular expression for a matching syslog message, you can use a proper regular expression.  
For example, if you want to detect ADMIN\_DOWN events on any port where a syslog is generated, use **.ADMIN\_DOWN.**. Entering the **ADMIN\_DOWN** command does not work.
- In the event specification for a syslog, the regex does not match any syslog message that is generated as an action of an EEM policy.
- If an EEM event matches a **show** command in the CLI and you want the output for that **show** command to display on the screen (and to not be blocked by the EEM policy), you must specify the **event-default** command for the first action for the EEM policy.

## Default Settings for Embedded Event Manager

Table 14: Default EEM Parameters

Parameters	Default
System Policies	Active

## Configuring Embedded Event Manager

### Defining an Environment Variable

Defining an environment variable is an optional step but is useful for configuring common values for repeated use in multiple policies.

#### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **event manager environment** *variable-name variable-value*
3. (Optional) **show event manager environment** {*variable-name* | **all**}
4. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> switch# configure terminal switch(config)#	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>event manager environment</b> <i>variable-name variable-value</i> <b>Example:</b> switch(config) # event manager environment emailto "admin@anyplace.com"	Creates an environment variable for EEM.  The <i>variable-name</i> can be any case-sensitive, alphanumeric string up to 29 characters.  The <i>variable-value</i> can be any quoted case-sensitive, alphanumeric string up to 39 characters.
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) <b>show event manager environment</b> { <i>variable-name</i>   <b>all</b> } <b>Example:</b> switch(config) # show event manager environment all	Displays information about the configured environment variables.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) <b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b> switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

## Defining a User Policy Using the CLI

## SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **event manager applet** *applet-name*
3. (Optional) **description** *policy-description*
4. **event** *event-statement*
5. (Optional) **tag** *tag* {**and** | **andnot** | **or**} *tag* [**and** | **andnot** | **or** {*tag*}] {**happens** *occurs in seconds*}
6. **action** *number*[.*number2*] *action-statement*
7. (Optional) **show event manager policy-state** *name* [**module** *module-id*]
8. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> switch# configure terminal switch(config)#	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>event manager applet</b> <i>applet-name</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config)# event manager applet monitorShutdown switch(config-applet)#</pre>	Registers the applet with EEM and enters applet configuration mode.  The applet-name can be any case-sensitive, alphanumeric string up to 29 characters.
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) <b>description</b> <i>policy-description</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-applet)# description "Monitors interface shutdown."</pre>	Configures a descriptive string for the policy.  The string can be any alphanumeric string up to 80 characters. Enclose the string in quotation marks.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>event</b> <i>event-statement</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-applet)# event cli match "shutdown"</pre>	Configures the event statement for the policy.
<b>Step 5</b>	(Optional) <b>tag</b> <i>tag</i> { <b>and</b>   <b>andnot</b>   <b>or</b> } <i>tag</i> [ <b>and</b>   <b>andnot</b>   <b>or</b> { <i>tag</i> }] { <b>happens</b> <i>occurs in seconds</i> } <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-applet)# tag one or two happens 1 in 10000</pre>	Correlates multiple events in the policy.  The range for the <i>occurs</i> argument is from 1 to 4294967295.  The range for the <i>seconds</i> argument is from 0 to 4294967295 seconds.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>action</b> <i>number</i> [. <i>number2</i> ] <i>action-statement</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-applet)# action 1.0 cli show interface e 3/1</pre>	Configures an action statement for the policy. Repeat this step for multiple action statements.
<b>Step 7</b>	(Optional) <b>show event manager policy-state</b> <i>name</i> [ <b>module</b> <i>module-id</i> ] <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-applet)# show event manager policy-state monitorShutdown</pre>	Displays information about the status of the configured policy.
<b>Step 8</b>	(Optional) <b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config</pre>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

## Configuring Event Statements

Use one of the following commands in EEM configuration mode (config-applet) to configure an event statement:

### Before you begin

Define a user policy.

## SUMMARY STEPS

1. **event cli** [**tag tag**] **match** *expression* [**count repeats** | **time seconds**]
2. **event counter** [**tag tag**] **name** *counter* **entry-val** *entry* **entry-op** {**eq** | **ge** | **gt** | **le** | **lt** | **ne**} {**exit-val** *exit* **exit-op** {**eq** | **ge** | **gt** | **le** | **lt** | **ne**}}
3. **event fanabsent** [**fan number**] **time** *seconds*
4. **event fanbad** [**fan number**] **time** *seconds*
5. **event memory** {**critical** | **minor** | **severe**}
6. **event policy-default** **count** *repeats* [**time seconds**]
7. **event snmp** [**tag tag**] **oid** *oid* **get-type** {**exact** | **next**} **entry-op** {**eq** | **ge** | **gt** | **le** | **lt** | **ne**} **entry-val** *entry* [**exit-comb** {**and** | **or**}] **exit-op** {**eq** | **ge** | **gt** | **le** | **lt** | **ne**} **exit-val** *exit* **exit-time** *time* **polling-interval** *interval*
8. **event sysmgr memory** [**module module-num**] **major** *major-percent* **minor** *minor-percent* **clear** *clear-percent*
9. **event temperature** [**module slot**] [**sensor number**] **threshold** {**any** | **down** | **up**}
10. **event track** [**tag tag**] **object-number** **state** {**any** | **down** | **up**}

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>event cli</b> [ <b>tag tag</b> ] <b>match</b> <i>expression</i> [ <b>count repeats</b>   <b>time seconds</b> ] <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-applet) # event cli match "shutdown"</pre>	Triggers an event if you enter a command that matches the regular expression.  The <b>tag tag</b> keyword-argument pair identifies this specific event when multiple events are included in the policy.  The <i>repeats</i> range is from 1 to 65000.  The <i>time</i> range is from 0 to 4294967295, where 0 indicates no time limit.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>event counter</b> [ <b>tag tag</b> ] <b>name</b> <i>counter</i> <b>entry-val</b> <i>entry</i> <b>entry-op</b> { <b>eq</b>   <b>ge</b>   <b>gt</b>   <b>le</b>   <b>lt</b>   <b>ne</b> } { <b>exit-val</b> <i>exit</i> <b>exit-op</b> { <b>eq</b>   <b>ge</b>   <b>gt</b>   <b>le</b>   <b>lt</b>   <b>ne</b> }} <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-applet) # event counter name mycounter entry-val 20 gt</pre>	Triggers an event if the counter crosses the entry threshold based on the entry operation. The event resets immediately. Optionally, you can configure the event to reset after the counter passes the exit threshold.  The <b>tag tag</b> keyword-argument pair identifies this specific event when multiple events are included in the policy.  The <i>counter</i> name can be any case-sensitive, alphanumeric string up to 28 characters.  The <i>entry</i> and <i>exit</i> value ranges are from 0 to 2147483647.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>event fanabsent</b> [ <b>fan number</b> ] <b>time</b> <i>seconds</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-applet) # event fanabsent time 300</pre>	Triggers an event if a fan is removed from the device for more than the configured time, in seconds.  The <i>number</i> range is from 1 to 1 and is module-dependent.  The <i>seconds</i> range is from 10 to 64000.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>event fanbad</b> [ <b>fan number</b> ] <b>time</b> <i>seconds</i> <b>Example:</b>	Triggers an event if a fan fails for more than the configured time, in seconds.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<code>switch(config-applet) # event fanbad time 3000</code>	The <i>number</i> range is module-dependent. The <i>seconds</i> range is from 10 to 64000.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>event memory {critical   minor   severe}</b> <b>Example:</b> <code>switch(config-applet) # event memory critical</code>	Triggers an event if a memory threshold is crossed.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>event policy-default count repeats [time seconds]</b> <b>Example:</b> <code>switch(config-applet) # event policy-default count 3</code>	Uses the event configured in the system policy. Use this option for overriding policies. The <i>repeats</i> range is from 1 to 65000. The <i>seconds</i> range is from 0 to 4294967295, where 0 indicates no time limit.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>event snmp [tag tag] oid oid get-type {exact   next} entry-op {eq   ge   gt   le   lt   ne} entry-val entry [exit-comb {and   or}]exit-op {eq   ge   gt   le   lt   ne} exit-val exit exit-time time polling-interval interval</b> <b>Example:</b> <code>switch(config-applet) # event snmp oid 1.3.6.1.2.1.31.1.1.1.6 get-type next entry-op lt 300 entry-val 0 exit-op eq 400 exit-time 30 polling-interval 300</code>	Triggers an event if the SNMP OID crosses the entry threshold based on the entry operation. The event resets immediately, or optionally you can configure the event to reset after the counter passes the exit threshold. The OID is in dotted decimal notation. The <b>tag tag</b> keyword-argument pair identifies this specific event when multiple events are included in the policy. The <i>entry</i> and <i>exit</i> value ranges are from 0 to 18446744073709551615. The <i>time</i> , in seconds, is from 0 to 2147483647. The <i>interval</i> , in seconds, is from 0 to 2147483647.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>event sysmgr memory [module module-num] major major-percent minor minor-percent clear clear-percent</b> <b>Example:</b> <code>switch(config-applet) # event sysmgr memory minor 80</code>	Triggers an event if the specified system manager memory threshold is exceeded. The <i>percent</i> range is from 1 to 99.
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>event temperature [module slot] [sensor number] threshold {any   down   up}</b> <b>Example:</b> <code>switch(config-applet) # event temperature module 2 threshold any</code>	Triggers an event if the temperature sensor exceeds the configured threshold. The <i>sensor</i> range is from 1 to 18.
<b>Step 10</b>	<b>event track [tag tag] object-number state {any   down   up}</b> <b>Example:</b> <code>switch(config-applet) # event track 1 state down</code>	Triggers an event if the tracked object is in the configured state. The <b>tag tag</b> keyword-argument pair identifies this specific event when multiple events are included in the policy. The <i>object-number</i> range is from 1 to 500.

**What to do next**

Configure action statements.

If you have already configured action statements or choose not to, complete any of the optional tasks:

- Define a policy using a VSH script. Then, register and activate a VSH script policy.
- Configure memory thresholds
- Configure the syslog as an EEM publisher.
- Verify your EEM configuration.

## Configuring Action Statements

You can configure an action by using one of the following commands in EEM configuration mode (config-applet):



**Note** If you want to allow a triggered event to process any default actions, you must configure the EEM policy to allow the default action.

For example, if you match a command in a match statement, you must add the event-default action statement to the EEM policy or EEM does not allow the command to execute. You can use the **terminal event-manager bypass** command to allow all EEM policies with matches to execute the command.

**Before you begin**

Define a user policy.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. **action** *number*[.*number2*] **cli** *command1*[*command2*.] [**local**]
2. **action** *number*[.*number2*] **counter** *name* *counter* *value* *val* **op** {**dec** | **inc** | **nop** | **set**}
3. **action** *number*[.*number2*] **event-default**
4. **action** *number*[.*number2*] **policy-default**
5. **action** *number*[.*number2*] **reload** [**module** *slot* [- *slot*]]
6. **action** *number*[.*number2*] **snmp-trap** [**intdata1** *integer-data1*] [**intdata2** *integer-data2*] [**strdata** *string-data*]
7. **action** *number*[.*number2*] **syslog** [**priority** *prio-val*] **msg** *error-message*

**DETAILED STEPS**

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>action</b> <i>number</i> [. <i>number2</i> ] <b>cli</b> <i>command1</i> [ <i>command2</i> .] [ <b>local</b> ]  <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-applet) # action 1.0 cli "show interface e 3/1"</pre>	Runs the configured commands. You can optionally run the commands on the module where the event occurred.  The action label is in the format <i>number1.number2</i> .  The <i>number</i> can be any number from 1 to 16 digits.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		The range for <i>number2</i> is from 0 to 9.
Step 2	<p><b>action</b> <i>number</i>[.<i>number2</i>] <b>counter name</b> <i>counter value val</i>  <b>op</b> {<b>dec</b>   <b>inc</b>   <b>nop</b>   <b>set</b>}</p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>switch(config-applet) # action 2.0 counter name mycounter value 20 op inc</pre>	<p>Modifies the counter by the configured value and operation.</p> <p>The action label is in the format <i>number1.number2</i>.</p> <p>The <i>number</i> can be any number from 1 to 16 digits.</p> <p>The range for <i>number2</i> is from 0 to 9.</p> <p>The <i>counter</i> can be any case-sensitive, alphanumeric string up to 28 characters.</p> <p>The <i>val</i> can be an integer from 0 to 2147483647 or a substituted parameter.</p>
Step 3	<p><b>action</b> <i>number</i>[.<i>number2</i>] <b>event-default</b></p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>switch(config-applet) # action 1.0 event-default</pre>	<p>Completes the default action for the associated event.</p> <p>The action label is in the format <i>number1.number2</i>.</p> <p>The <i>number</i> can be any number from 1 to 16 digits.</p> <p>The range for <i>number2</i> is from 0 to 9.</p>
Step 4	<p><b>action</b> <i>number</i>[.<i>number2</i>] <b>policy-default</b></p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>switch(config-applet) # action 1.0 policy-default</pre>	<p>Completes the default action for the policy that you are overriding.</p> <p>The action label is in the format <i>number1.number2</i>.</p> <p>The <i>number</i> can be any number from 1 to 16 digits.</p> <p>The range for <i>number2</i> is from 0 to 9.</p>
Step 5	<p><b>action</b> <i>number</i>[.<i>number2</i>] <b>reload</b> [<b>module slot</b> [- <i>slot</i>]]</p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>switch(config-applet) # action 1.0 reload module 3-5</pre>	<p>Forces one or more modules to the entire system to reload.</p> <p>The action label is in the format <i>number1.number2</i>.</p> <p>The <i>number</i> can be any number from 1 to 16 digits.</p> <p>The range for <i>number2</i> is from 0 to 9.</p>
Step 6	<p><b>action</b> <i>number</i>[.<i>number2</i>] <b>snmp-trap</b> [<b>intdata1</b>  <i>integer-data1</i>] [<b>intdata2</b> <i>integer-data2</i>] [<b>strdata</b>  <i>string-data</i>]</p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>switch(config-applet) # action 1.0 snmp-trap strdata "temperature problem"</pre>	<p>Sends an SNMP trap with the configured data. The action label is in the format <i>number1.number2</i>.</p> <p>The <i>number</i> can be any number from 1 to 16 digits.</p> <p>The range for <i>number2</i> is from 0 to 9.</p> <p>The <i>data</i> elements can be any number up to 80 digits.</p> <p>The <i>string</i> can be any alphanumeric string up to 80 characters.</p>
Step 7	<p><b>action</b> <i>number</i>[.<i>number2</i>] <b>syslog</b> [<b>priority prio-val</b>] <b>msg</b>  <i>error-message</i></p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>switch(config-applet) # action 1.0 syslog priority notifications msg "cpu high"</pre>	<p>Sends a customized syslog message at the configured priority.</p> <p>The action label is in the format <i>number1.number2</i>.</p> <p>The <i>number</i> can be any number from 1 to 16 digits.</p> <p>The range for <i>number2</i> is from 0 to 9.</p>

	Command or Action	Purpose
		The <i>error-message</i> can be any quoted alphanumeric string up to 80 characters.

**What to do next**

Configure event statements.

If you have already configured event statements or choose not to, complete any of the optional tasks:

- Define a policy using a VSH script. Then, register and activate a VSH script policy.
- Configure memory thresholds
- Configure the syslog as an EEM publisher.
- Verify your EEM configuration.

## Defining a Policy Using a VSH Script

This is an optional task. Complete the following steps if you are using a VSH script to write EEM policies:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. In a text editor, list the commands that define the policy.
2. Name the text file and save it.
3. Copy the file to the following system directory: `bootflash://eem/user_script_policies`

**DETAILED STEPS**

- 
- Step 1** In a text editor, list the commands that define the policy.
- Step 2** Name the text file and save it.
- Step 3** Copy the file to the following system directory: `bootflash://eem/user_script_policies`
- 

**What to do next**

Register and activate a VSH script policy.

## Registering and Activating a VSH Script Policy

This is an optional task. Complete the following steps if you are using a VSH script to write EEM policies.

**Before you begin**

Define a policy using a VSH script and copy the file to the system directory.



**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. **configure terminal**
2. **event manager policy** *policy-script*
3. (Optional) **event manager policy internal** *name*
4. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

**DETAILED STEPS**

	<b>Command or Action</b>	<b>Purpose</b>
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch# configure terminal switch(config)#</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>event manager policy</b> <i>policy-script</i>  <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config)# event manager policy moduleScript</pre>	Registers and activates an EEM script policy.  The <i>policy-script</i> can be any case-sensitive, alphanumeric string up to 29 characters.
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) <b>event manager policy internal</b> <i>name</i>  <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config)# event manager policy internal moduleScript</pre>	Registers and activates an EEM script policy.  The <i>policy-script</i> can be any case-sensitive alphanumeric string up to 29 characters.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>  <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config</pre>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

**What to do next**

Complete any of the following, depending on your system requirements:

- Configure memory thresholds.
- Configure the syslog as an EEM publisher.
- Verify your EEM configuration.

## Overriding a System Policy

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. **configure terminal**
2. (Optional) **show event manager policy-state** *system-policy*
3. **event manager applet** *applet-name* **override** *system-policy*
4. **description** *policy-description*
5. **event** *event-statement*

6. **section number action-statement**
7. (Optional) **show event manager policy-state name**
8. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch# configure terminal switch(config)#</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	(Optional) <b>show event manager policy-state system-policy</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-applet)# show event manager policy-state __ethpm_link_flap Policy __ethpm_link_flap   Cfg count : 5   Cfg time interval : 10.000000 (seconds)   Hash default, Count 0</pre>	Displays information about the system policy that you want to override, including thresholds. Use the <b>show event manager system-policy</b> command to find the system policy names.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>event manager applet applet-name override system-policy</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-applet)# event manager applet ethport override __ethpm_link_flap switch(config-applet)#</pre>	Overrides a system policy and enters applet configuration mode.  The <i>applet-name</i> can be any case-sensitive, alphanumeric string up to 80 characters.  The <i>system-policy</i> must be one of the system policies.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>description policy-description</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-applet)# description "Overrides link flap policy"</pre>	Configures a descriptive string for the policy.  The <i>policy-description</i> can be any case-sensitive, alphanumeric string up to 80 characters, but it must be enclosed in quotation marks.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>event event-statement</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-applet)# event policy-default count 2 time 1000</pre>	Configures the event statement for the policy.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>section number action-statement</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-applet)# action 1.0 syslog priority warnings msg "Link is flapping."</pre>	Configures an action statement for the policy. For multiple action statements, repeat this step.
<b>Step 7</b>	(Optional) <b>show event manager policy-state name</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-applet)# show event manager policy-state ethport</pre>	Displays information about the configured policy.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 8	(Optional) <b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b> switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

## Configuring Syslog as an EEM Publisher

Configuring syslog as an EEM publisher allows you to monitor syslog messages from the switch.



**Note** The maximum number of searchable strings to monitor syslog messages is 10.

### Before you begin

- Confirm that EEM is available for registration by the syslog.
- Confirm that the syslog daemon is configured and executed.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **event manager applet** *applet-name*
3. **event syslog** [**tag** *tag*] {**occurs** *number* | **period** *seconds* | **pattern** *msg-text* | **priority** *priority*}
4. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> switch# configure terminal switch(config)#	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	<b>event manager applet</b> <i>applet-name</i> <b>Example:</b> switch(config)# event manager applet abc switch (config-appliet)#	Registers an applet with EEM and enters applet configuration mode.
Step 3	<b>event syslog</b> [ <b>tag</b> <i>tag</i> ] { <b>occurs</b> <i>number</i>   <b>period</b> <i>seconds</i>   <b>pattern</b> <i>msg-text</i>   <b>priority</b> <i>priority</i> }	Registers an applet with EEM and enters applet configuration mode.
	<b>Example:</b> switch(config-appliet)# event syslog occurs 10	

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>  <b>Example:</b> switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

**What to do next**

Verify your EEM configuration.

## Verifying the Embedded Event Manager Configuration

Use one of the following commands to verify the configuration:

Command	Purpose
<b>show event manager environment</b> [ <i>variable-name</i>   <b>all</b> ]	Displays information about the event manager environment variables.
<b>show event manager event-types</b> [ <i>event</i>   <b>all</b>   <b>module slot</b> ]	Displays information about the event manager event types.
<b>show event manager history events</b> [ <b>detail</b> ] [ <b>maximum num-events</b> ] [ <b>severity {catastrophic   minor   moderate   severe}</b> ]	Displays the history of events for all policies.
<b>show event manager policy-state</b> <i>policy-name</i>	Displays information about the policy state, including thresholds.
<b>show event manager script system</b> [ <i>policy-name</i>   <b>all</b> ]	Displays information about the script policies.
<b>show event manager system-policy</b> [ <b>all</b> ]	Displays information about the predefined system policies.
<b>show running-config eem</b>	Displays information about the running configuration for EEM.
<b>show startup-config eem</b>	Displays information about the startup configuration for EEM.

## Event Log Auto-Collection and Backup

Automatically collected event logs are stored locally on switch memory. Event log file storage is a temporary buffer that stores files for a fixed amount of time. Once the time period has elapsed, a roll-over of the buffer makes room for the next files. The roll-over uses a first-in-first-out method.

Beginning with Cisco NX-OS Release 9.3(3), EEM uses the following methods of collection and backup:

- Extended Log File Retention

- Trigger-Based Event Log Auto-Collection

## Extended Log File Retention

Beginning with Cisco NX-OS release 9.3(3), all Cisco Nexus platform switches, with at least 8Gb of system memory, support the extended retention of event logging files. Storing the log files locally on the switch or remotely through an external container, reduces the loss of event logs due to rollover.

### Enabling Extended Log File Retention For All Services

Extended Log File Retention is enabled by default for all services running on a switch. If the switch doesn't have the log file retention feature enabled (**no bloggerd log-dump** is configured), use the following procedure to enable it.

#### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **bloggerd log-dump all**

#### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch# configure terminal switch(config)#</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	<b>bloggerd log-dump all</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config)# bloggerd log-dump all switch(config)#</pre>	Enables the log file retention feature for all services.

#### Example

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# bloggerd log-dump all
Sending Enable Request to Bloggerd
Bloggerd Log Dump Successfully enabled
switch(config)#
```

### Disabling Extended Log File Retention For All Services

Extended Log File Retention is disabled by default for all services on the switch. If the switch has the log file retention feature enabled for all services and you want to disable it, use the following procedure.

#### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **no bloggerd log-dump all**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch# configure terminal switch(config)#</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>no bloggerd log-dump all</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config)# no bloggerd log-dump all switch(config)#</pre>	Disables the log file retention feature for all services on the switch.

**Example**

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# no bloggerd log-dump all
Sending Disable Request to Bloggerd
Bloggerd Log Dump Successfully disabled
switch(config)#
```

## Enabling Extended Log File Retention For a Single Service

Extended Log File Retention is enabled by default for all services running on a switch. If the switch doesn't have the log file retention feature enabled (**no bloggerd log-dump** is configured), use the following procedure to enable it for a single service.

## SUMMARY STEPS

1. **show system internal sysmgr service name** *service-type*
2. **configure terminal**
3. **bloggerd log-dump sap** *number*
4. **show system internal bloggerd info log-dump-info**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>show system internal sysmgr service name</b> <i>service-type</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch# show system internal sysmgr service name aclmgr</pre>	Displays information about the ACL Manager including the service SAP number.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch# configure terminal switch(config)#</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	<b>bloggerd log-dump sap <i>number</i></b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config)# bloggerd log-dump sap 351</pre>	Enables the log file retention feature for the ACL Manager service.
Step 4	<b>show system internal bloggerd info log-dump-info</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config)# show system internal bloggerd info log-dump-info</pre>	Displays information about the log file retention feature on the switch.

### Example

```
switch# show system internal sysmgr service name aclmgr
Service "aclmgr" ("aclmgr", 80):
  UUID = 0x182, PID = 653, SAP = 351
  State: SRV_STATE_HANDSHAKED (entered at time Mon Nov  4 11:10:41 2019).
  Restart count: 1
  Time of last restart: Mon Nov  4 11:10:39 2019.
  The service never crashed since the last reboot.
  Tag = N/A
  Plugin ID: 0

switch(config)# configure terminal
switch(config)# bloggerd log-dump sap 351
Sending Enable Request to Bloggerd
Bloggerd Log Dump Successfully enabled
switch(config)# show system internal bloggerd info log-dump-info
-----
Log Dump config is READY
Log Dump is DISABLED for ALL application services in the switch
Exceptions to the above rule (if any) are as follows:
-----
Module      | VDC      | SAP              | Enabled?
-----
1           | 1        | 351 (MTS_SAP_ACLMGR) | Enabled
-----

Log Dump Throttle Switch-Wide Config:
-----
Log Dump Throttle                : ENABLED
Minimum buffer rollover count (before throttling) : 5
Maximum allowed rollover count per minute         : 1
-----

switch(config)#
```

### Displaying Extended Log Files

Use this task to display the event log files currently stored on the switch.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. `dir debug:log-dump/`

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>dir debug:log-dump/</b> <b>Example:</b> switch# dir debug:log-dump/	Displays the event log files currently stored on the switch.

**Example**

```
switch# dir debug:log-dump/

3676160 Dec 05 02:43:01 2019 20191205023755_evtlog_archive.tar
3553280 Dec 05 06:05:06 2019 20191205060005_evtlog_archive.tar

Usage for debug://sup-local
913408 bytes used
4329472 bytes free
5242880 bytes total
```

## Disabling Extended Log File Retention For a Single Service

Extended Log File Retention is enabled by default for all services on the switch. If the switch has the log file retention feature enabled for a single service or all services (by default in Cisco NX-OS Release 9.3(5)), and you want to disable a specific service or services, use the following procedure.

## SUMMARY STEPS

1. **show system internal sysmgr service name *service-type***
2. **configure terminal**
3. **no bloggerd log-dump sap *number***
4. **show system internal bloggerd info log-dump-info**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>show system internal sysmgr service name <i>service-type</i></b> <b>Example:</b> switch# show system internal sysmgr service name aclmgr	Displays information about the ACL Manager including the service SAP number.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> switch# configure terminal switch(config)#	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>no bloggerd log-dump sap <i>number</i></b> <b>Example:</b> switch(config)# no bloggerd log-dump sap 351	Disables the log file retention feature for the ACL Manager service.



	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 4	<p><b>show system internal bloggerd info log-dump-info</b></p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>switch(config)# show system internal bloggerd info log-dump-info</pre>	Displays information about the log file retention feature on the switch.

### Example

The following example shows how to disable extended log file retention for a service named "aclmgr":

```
switch# show system internal sysmgr service name aclmgr
Service "aclmgr" ("aclmgr", 80):
  UUID = 0x182, PID = 653, SAP = 351
  State: SRV_STATE_HANDSHAKED (entered at time Mon Nov  4 11:10:41 2019).
  Restart count: 1
  Time of last restart: Mon Nov  4 11:10:39 2019.
  The service never crashed since the last reboot.
  Tag = N/A
  Plugin ID: 0
switch(config)# configure terminal
switch(config)# no bloggerd log-dump sap 351
Sending Disable Request to Bloggerd
Bloggerd Log Dump Successfully disabled
switch(config)# show system internal bloggerd info log-dump-info
-----
Log Dump config is READY
Log Dump is DISABLED for ALL application services in the switch
Exceptions to the above rule (if any) are as follows:
-----
Module      | VDC      | SAP              | Enabled?
-----
1           | 1        | 351 (MTS_SAP_ACLMGR) | Disabled
-----
Log Dump Throttle Switch-Wide Config:
-----
Log Dump Throttle                               : ENABLED
Minimum buffer rollover count (before throttling) : 5
Maximum allowed rollover count per minute        : 1
-----

switch(config)#
```

## Trigger-Based Event Log Auto-Collection

Trigger-based log collection capabilities:

- Automatically collect relevant data when issues occur.
- No impact on control plane
- Customizable configuration:
  - Defaults populated by Cisco
  - Selectively override what-to-collect by network administrator or by Cisco TAC.

- Automatically update new triggers on image upgrades.
- Store logs locally on the switch or remotely on an external server.
- Supports severity 0, 1, and 2 syslogs:
- Custom syslogs for ad-hoc events (auto-collection commands attached to the syslogs)

## Enabling Trigger-Based Log File Auto-Collection

To enable trigger-based automatic creation of log files, you must create an override policy for the `__syslog_trigger_default` system policy with a custom YAML file and define the specific logs for which information will be collected.

For more information on creating a custom YAML file to enable log file auto-collection, see [Configuring the Auto-Collection YAML File, on page 130](#).

### Auto-Collection YAML File

The Auto-Collection YAML file that is specified in the **action** command in the EEM function, defines actions for different system or feature components. This file is located in the switch directory: `/bootflash/scripts`. In addition to the default YAML file, you can create component-specific YAML files and place them in the same directory. The naming convention for component-specific YAML files is **component-name.yaml**. If a component-specific file is present in the same directory, it takes precedence over the file that is specified in the **action** command. For example, if the action file, `bootflash/scripts/platform.yaml` is in the `/bootflash/scripts` directory with the default action file, `bootflash/scripts/test.yaml`, then the instructions defined in `platform.yaml` file take precedence over the instructions for the platform component present in the default `test.yaml` file.

Examples of components are, ARP, BGP, IS-IS, and so on. If you are not familiar with all the component names, contact Cisco Customer Support for assistance in defining the YAML file for component-specific actions (and for the default `test.yaml` file as well).

Example:

```
event manager applet test_1 override __syslog_trigger_default
  action 1.0 collect test.yaml $_syslog_msg
```

### Configuring the Auto-Collection YAML File

A contents of a YAML file determines the data collected during trigger-based auto-collection. There must be only one YAML file on the switch but it can contain auto-collection meta-data for any number of switch components and messages.

Locate the YAML file in the following directory on the switch:

```
/bootflash/scripts
```

Invoke the YAML file for trigger-based collection by using the following example. The example shows the minimum required configuration for trigger-based collection to work with a user-defined YAML file.

```
switch# show running-config eem
!Command: show running-config eem
!Running configuration last done at: Mon Sep 30 19:34:54 2019
!Time: Mon Sep 30 22:24:55 2019
version 9.3(3) Bios:version 07.59
event manager applet test_1 override __syslog_trigger_default
  action 1.0 collect test.yaml $_syslog_msg
```

In the preceding example, "test\_1" is the name of the applet and "test.yaml" is the name of the user-configured YAML file present in the /bootflash/scripts directory.

### Example YAML File

The following is an example of a basic YAML file supporting the trigger-based event log auto-collection feature. The definitions for the keys/values in the file are in the table that follows.



**Note** Make sure that the YMAL file has proper indentation. As a best practice, run it through any "online YAML validator" before using it on a switch.

```
bash-4.3$ cat /bootflash/scripts/test.yaml
version: 1
components:
  securityd:
    default:
      tech-sup: port
      commands: show module
  platform:
    default:
      tech-sup: port
      commands: show module
```

Key: Value	Description
version: 1	Set to 1. Any other number creates an incompatibility for the auto collect script.
components:	Keyword specifying that what follows are switch components.
securityd:	Name of the syslog component ( <code>securityd</code> is a facility name in syslog).
default:	Identifies all messages belonging to the component.
tech-sup: port	Collect tech support of the port module for the <code>securityd</code> syslog component.
commands: show module	Collect show module command output for the <code>securityd</code> syslog component.
platform:	Name of the syslog component ( <code>platform</code> is a facility name in syslog).
tech-sup: port	Collect tech support of the port module for the <code>platform</code> syslog component.
commands: show module	Collect show module command output for the <code>platform</code> syslog component.

Use the following example to associate auto-collect metadata only for a specific log. For example, SECURITYD-2-FEATURE\_ENABLE\_DISABLE

```
securityd:
  feature_enable_disable:
    tech-sup: security
    commands: show module
```

Key: Value	Description
securityd:	Name of the syslog component ( <code>securityd</code> is a facility name in syslog).
feature_enable_disable:	Message ID of the syslog message.
tech-sup: security	Collect tech support of the security module for the <code>securityd</code> syslog component.
commands: show module	Collect show module command output for the security syslog component.

Example syslog output for the above YAML entry:

```
2019 Dec 4 12:41:01 n9k-c93108tc-fx %SECURITYD-2-FEATURE_ENABLE_DISABLE: User
has enabled the feature bash-shell
```

Use the following example to specify multiple values.

```
version: 1
components:
  securityd:
    default:
      commands: show module;show version;show module
      tech-sup: port;lldp
```



**Note** Use semicolons to separate multiple show commands and tech support key values (see the preceding example).

Beginning with Release 10.1(1), `test.yaml` can be replaced with a folder inside which more than one YAML files can be present. All the YAML files in the folder must follow the `ComponentName.yaml` naming convention.

In the following example, `test.yaml` is replaced with `test_folder`:

```
test.yaml:
event manager applet logging2 override __syslog_trigger_default
  action 1.0 collect test.yaml rate-limit 30 $_syslog_msg

test_folder:
event manager applet logging2 override __syslog_trigger_default
  action 1.0 collect test_folder rate-limit 30 $_syslog_msg
```

The following example shows the path and component(s) for `test_folder`:

```
ls /bootflash/scripts/test_folder
bgp.yaml ppm.yaml
```

## Limiting the Amount of Auto-Collections Per Component

For auto-collection, the limit of the number of bundles per component event is set to three (3) by default. If more than three events occur for a component, then the events are dropped with the status message **EVENTLOGLIMITREACHED**. The auto-collection of the component event restarts when the event log has rolled over.

Example:

```
switch# show system internal event-logs auto-collect history
DateTime          Snapshot ID  Syslog          Status/Secs/Logsize(Bytes)
2020-Jun-27 07:20:03 1140276903  ACLMGR-0-TEST_SYSLOG  EVENTLOGLIMITREACHED
2020-Jun-27 07:15:14 1026359228  ACLMGR-0-TEST_SYSLOG  RATELIMITED
```

```

2020-Jun-27 07:15:09 384952880 ACLMGR-0-TEST_SYSLOG RATELIMITED
2020-Jun-27 07:13:55 1679333688 ACLMGR-0-TEST_SYSLOG PROCESSED:2:9332278
2020-Jun-27 07:13:52 1679333688 ACLMGR-0-TEST_SYSLOG PROCESSING
2020-Jun-27 07:12:55 502545693 ACLMGR-0-TEST_SYSLOG RATELIMITED
2020-Jun-27 07:12:25 1718497217 ACLMGR-0-TEST_SYSLOG RATELIMITED
2020-Jun-27 07:08:25 1432687513 ACLMGR-0-TEST_SYSLOG PROCESSED:2:10453823
2020-Jun-27 07:08:22 1432687513 ACLMGR-0-TEST_SYSLOG PROCESSING
2020-Jun-27 07:06:16 90042807 ACLMGR-0-TEST_SYSLOG RATELIMITED
2020-Jun-27 07:03:26 1737578642 ACLMGR-0-TEST_SYSLOG RATELIMITED
2020-Jun-27 07:02:56 40101277 ACLMGR-0-TEST_SYSLOG PROCESSED:3:10542045
2020-Jun-27 07:02:52 40101277 ACLMGR-0-TEST_SYSLOG PROCESSING

```

## Auto-Collection Log Files

### About Auto-Collection Log Files

The configuration in a YAML file determines the contents of an auto-collected log file. You can't configure the amount of memory used for collected log files. You can configure the frequency of when the stored files get purged.

Autocollected log files get saved in the following directory:

```

switch# dir bootflash:eem_snapshots
 44205843 Sep 25 11:08:04 2019
1480625546_SECURITYD_2_FEATURE_ENABLE_DISABLE_eem_snapshot.tar.gz
  Usage for bootflash://sup-local
 6940545024 bytes used
44829761536 bytes free
51770306560 bytes total

```

### Accessing the Log Files

Locate the logs by using the command keyword "debug":

```

switch# dir debug:///
...
 26 Oct 22 10:46:31 2019 log-dump
 24 Oct 22 10:46:31 2019 log-snapshot-auto
 26 Oct 22 10:46:31 2019 log-snapshot-user

```

The following table describes the log locations and the log types stored.

Location	Description
log-dump	This folder stores Event logs on log rollover.
log-snapshot-auto	This folder contains the auto-collected logs for syslog events 0, 1, 2.
log-snapshot-user	This folder stores the collected logs when you run the <code>bloggerd log-snapshot &lt;&gt;</code> command.

Use the following example to view the log files generated on log rollover:

```

switch# dir debug:log-dump/
debug:log-dump/20191022104656_evtlog_archive.tar
debug:log-dump/20191022111241_evtlog_archive.tar
debug:log-dump/20191022111841_evtlog_archive.tar
debug:log-dump/20191022112431_evtlog_archive.tar
debug:log-dump/20191022113042_evtlog_archive.tar
debug:log-dump/20191022113603_evtlog_archive.tar

```

## Parsing the Log tar Files

Use the following example to parse the logs in the tar files:

```
switch# show system internal event-logs parse debug:log-dump/20191022104656_evtlog_archive.tar
-----LOGS:/tmp/BLOGGERD0.991453012199/tmp/1-191022104658-191022110741-device_test-M27-V1-I1:0-P884.gz-----
2019 Oct 22 11:07:41.597864 E_DEBUG Oct 22 11:07:41 2019(diag_test_start):Data Space
Limits(bytes): Soft: -1  Ha rd: -1
2019 Oct 22 11:07:41.597857 E_DEBUG Oct 22 11:07:41 2019(diag_test_start):Stack Space
Limits(bytes): Soft: 500000  Hard: 500000
2019 Oct 22 11:07:41.597850 E_DEBUG Oct 22 11:07:41 2019(diag_test_start):AS: 1005952076
-1
2019 Oct 22 11:07:41.597406 E_DEBUG Oct 22 11:07:41 2019(device_test_process_events):Sdwrap
msg unknown
2019 Oct 22 11:07:41.597398 E_DEBUG Oct 22 11:07:41 2019(diag_test_start):Going back to
select
2019 Oct 22 11:07:41.597395 E_DEBUG Oct 22 11:07:41 2019(nvram_test):TestNvram examine 27
blocks
2019 Oct 22 11:07:41.597371 E_DEBUG Oct 22 11:07:41 2019(diag_test_start):Parent: Thread
created test index:4 thread_id:-707265728
2019 Oct 22 11:07:41.597333 E_DEBUG Oct 22 11:07:41 2019(diag_test_start):Node inserted
2019 Oct 22 11:07:41.597328 E_DEBUG Oct 22 11:07:41 2019(diag_test_start):The test index
in diag is 4
2019 Oct 22 11:07:41.597322 E_DEBUG Oct 22 11:07:41 2019(diag_test_start):result severity
level
2019 Oct 22 11:07:41.597316 E_DEBUG Oct 22 11:07:41 2019(diag_test_start):callhome alert
level
```

The following table describes the additional keywords available for parsing the specific tar file:

Keyword	Description
<b>component</b>	Decode logs belonging to the component identified by process name.
<b>from-datetime</b>	Decode logs from a specific date and time in yy[mm[dd[HH[MM[SS]]]]] format.
<b>instance</b>	List of SDWRAP buffer instances to be decoded (comma separated).
<b>module</b>	Decode logs from modules such as SUP and LC (using module IDs).
<b>to-datetime</b>	Decode logs up to a specific date and time in yy[mm[dd[HH[MM[SS]]]]] format.

## Copying Logs to a Different Location

Use the following example to copy logs to a different location such as a remote server:

```
switch# copy debug:log-dump/20191022104656_evtlog_archive.tar
scp://<ip-address>/nobackup/<user> vrf management use-kstack
Enter username: user@<ip-address>'s password:
20191022104656_evtlog_archive.tar                               100%  130KB
130.0KB/s   00:00
Copy complete, now saving to disk (please wait)...
Copy complete.
```

## Purging Auto-Collection Log Files

There are two types of generated trigger-based auto-collection logs: EventHistory and EventBundle.

### Purge Logic for EventHistory Logs

For event history, purging occurs in the /var/sysmgr/srv\_logs/xport folder. 250MB of partitioned RAM is mounted at /var/sysmgr/srv\_logs directory.

If the `/var/sysmgr/srv_logs` memory usage is under 65% of the 250MB allocated, no files get purged. When the memory utilization reaches the 65% limit level, the oldest files get purged until there's enough memory available to continue saving new logs.

### Purge Logic for EventBundle Logs

For event bundles, the purge logic occurs in the `/bootflash/eem_snapshots` folder. For storing the auto-collected snapshots, the EEM auto-collect script allocates 5% of the bootflash storage. The logs get purged once the 5% bootflash capacity is used.

When a new auto-collected log is available but there's no space to save it in bootflash (already at 5% capacity), the system checks the following:

1. If there are existing auto-collected files that are more than 12 hours old, the system deletes the files and the new logs get copied.
2. If the existing auto collected files are less than 12 hours old, the system discards the newly collected logs without saving them.

You can modify the 12-hour default purge time by using the following commands. The time specified in the command is in minutes.

```
switch(config)# event manager applet test override __syslog_trigger_default
switch(config-applet)# action 1.0 collect test.yaml purge-time 300 $_syslog_msg
```

**event manager** command: `test` is an example name for the policy. **\_\_syslog\_trigger\_default** is the name of the system policy that you want to override. This name must begin with a double underscore ( `__` ).

**action** command: **1.0** is an example number for the order in which the action is executed. **collect** indicates that data is collected using the YAML file. `test.yaml` is an example name of the YAML file. **\$\_syslog\_msg** is the name of the component.



#### Note

At any given time, there can be only one trigger-based auto-collection event in progress. If another new log event is attempting to be stored when auto-collection is already occurring, the new log event is discarded.

By default, there's only one trigger-based bundle collected every five minutes (300 sec). This rate limiting is also configurable by the following commands. The time specified in the command is in seconds.

```
switch(config)# event manager applet test override __syslog_trigger_default
switch(config-applet)# action 1.0 collect test.yaml rate-limit 600 $_syslog_msg
```

**event manager** command: `test` is an example name for the policy. **\_\_syslog\_trigger\_default** is an example name of the system policy to override. This name must begin with a double underscore ( `__` ).

**action** command: **1.0** is an example number for the order in which the action is executed. **collect** indicates that data is collected using the YAML file. `test.yaml` is an example name of the YAML file. **\$\_syslog\_msg** is the name of the component.

Beginning with Release 10.1(1), the rate of collection can also be regulated using a maximum number of triggers option, ensuring that only those many number of triggers are honored. After the **max-triggers** value is reached, no more bundles will be collected on the syslog occurrence.

```
event manager applet test_1 override __syslog_trigger_default
  action 1.0 collect test.yaml rate-limit 30 max-triggers 5 $_syslog_msg
```



**Note** If you delete auto collected bundles manually from `debug:log-snapshot-auto/`, then it will restart the collection based on the configured number of **max-triggers** when the next event occurs.

### Auto-Collection Statistics and History

The following example shows trigger-based collection statistics:

```
switch# show system internal event-logs auto-collect statistics
-----EEM Auto Collection Statistics-----
Syslog Parse Successful :88 Syslog Parse Failure :0
Syslog Ratelimited :0 Rate Limit Check Failed :0
Syslog Dropped(Last Action In Prog) :53 Storage Limit Reached :0
User Yaml Action File Unavailable :0 User Yaml Parse Successful :35
User Yaml Parse Error :0 Sys Yaml Action File Unavailable :11
Sys Yaml Parse Successful :3 Sys Yaml Parse Error :0
Yaml Action Not Defined :0 Syslog Processing Initiated :24
Log Collection Failed :0 Tar Creation Error :0
Signal Interrupt :0 Script Exception :0
Syslog Processed Successfully :24 Logfiles Purged :0
```

The following example shows trigger-based collection history (the processed syslogs, process time, size of the data collected) obtained using a CLI command:

```
switch# show system internal event-logs auto-collect history
DateTime Snapshot ID Syslog Status/Secs/Logsize(Bytes)
2019-Dec-04 05:30:32 1310232084 VPC-0-TEST_SYSLOG PROCESSED:9:22312929
2019-Dec-04 05:30:22 1310232084 VPC-0-TEST_SYSLOG PROCESSING
2019-Dec-04 04:30:13 1618762270 ACLMGR-0-TEST_SYSLOG PROCESSED:173:33194665
2019-Dec-04 04:28:47 897805674 SYSLOG-1-SYSTEM_MSG DROPPED-LASTACTIONINPROG
2019-Dec-04 04:28:47 947981421 SYSLOG-1-SYSTEM_MSG DROPPED-LASTACTIONINPROG
2019-Dec-04 04:27:19 1618762270 ACLMGR-0-TEST_SYSLOG PROCESSING
2019-Dec-04 02:17:16 1957148102 CARDCLIENT-2-FPGA_BOOT_GOLDEN NOYAMLFILEFOUND
```

### Verifying Trigger-Based Log Collection

Verify that the trigger-based log collection feature is enabled by entering the **show event manager system-policy | i trigger** command as in this example:

```
switch# show event manager system-policy | i trigger n 2
      Name : __syslog_trigger_default
      Description : Default policy for trigger based logging
      Overridable : Yes
      Event type : 0x2101
```

### Checking Trigger-Based Log File Generation

You can check to see if the trigger-based auto-collection feature has generated any event log files. Enter one of the commands in the following examples:

```
switch# dir bootflash:eem_snapshots
9162547 Nov 12 22:33:15 2019 1006309316_SECURITYD_2_FEATURE_ENABLE_DISABLE_eem_snapshot.tar.gz

Usage for bootflash://sup-local
8911929344 bytes used
3555950592 bytes free
12467879936 bytes total

switch# dir debug:log-snapshot-auto/
63435992 Dec 03 06:28:52 2019
20191203062841_1394408030_PLATFORM_2_MOD_PWRDN_eem_snapshot.tar.gz
```



```
Usage for debug://sup-local
544768 bytes used
4698112 bytes free
5242880 bytes total
```

## Local Log File Storage

Local log file storage capabilities:

- Amount of local data storage time depends on the scale, and type, of deployment. For both modular and nonmodular switches, the storage time is from 15 minutes to several hours of data. To be able to collect relevant logs that span a longer period:
  - Only enable event log retention for the specific services/features you need. See [Enabling Extended Log File Retention For a Single Service](#), on page 126.
  - Export the internal event logs off the switch. See [External Log File Storage](#), on page 139.
- Compressed logs are stored in RAM.
- 250MB memory is reserved for log file storage.
- Log files are optimized in tar format (one file for every five minutes or 10MB, whichever occurs first).
- Allow snap-shot collection.

### Generating a Local Copy of Recent Log Files

Extended Log File Retention is enabled by default for all services running on a switch. For local storage, the log files are stored on flash memory. Use the following procedure to generate a copy of up to ten of the most recent event log files.

#### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **bloggerd log-snapshot** [*file-name*] [**bootflash:** *file-path* | **logflash:** *file-path* | **usb1:** ] [ **size** *file-size* ] [ **time** *minutes* ]

#### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	<p><b>bloggerd log-snapshot</b> [<i>file-name</i>] [<b>bootflash:</b> <i>file-path</i>   <b>logflash:</b> <i>file-path</i>   <b>usb1:</b> ] [ <b>size</b> <i>file-size</i> ] [ <b>time</b> <i>minutes</i> ]</p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>switch# bloggerd log-snapshot snapshot1</pre>	<p>Creates a snapshot bundle file of the last ten event logs stored on the switch. Default storage for this operation is <b>logflash</b>.</p> <p><i>file-name</i>: The filename of the generated snapshot log file bundle. Use a maximum of 64 characters for <i>file-name</i>.</p> <p><b>Note</b> This variable is optional. If it is not configured, the system applies a timestamp and "_snapshot_bundle.tar" as the filename.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>20200605161704_snapshot_bundle.tar</pre>

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<p><b>bootflash:</b> <i>file-path</i>: The file path where the snapshot log file bundle is being stored on the bootflash. Choose one of the following initial paths:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• bootflash:///</li> <li>• bootflash://module-1/</li> <li>• bootflash://sup-1/</li> <li>• bootflash://sup-active/</li> <li>• bootflash://sup-local/</li> </ul> <p><b>logflash:</b> <i>file-path</i>: The file path where the snapshot log file bundle is being stored on the logflash. Choose one of the following initial paths:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• logflash:///</li> <li>• logflash://module-1/</li> <li>• logflash://sup-1/</li> <li>• logflash://sup-active/</li> <li>• logflash://sup-local/</li> </ul> <p><b>usb1:</b> The file path where the snapshot log file bundle is being stored on the USB device.</p> <p><b>size</b> <i>file-size</i>: The snapshot log file bundle based on size in megabytes (MB). Range is from 5MB through 250MB.</p> <p><b>time</b> <i>minutes</i>: The snapshot log file bundle based on the last x amount of time (minutes). Range is from 1 minute through 30 minutes.</p>

### Example

```
switch# bloggerd log-snapshot snapshot1
Snapshot generated at logflash:evt_log_snapshot/snapshot1_snapshot_bundle.tar Please cleanup
once done.
switch#
switch# dir logflash:evt_log_snapshot
159098880 Dec 05 06:40:24 2019 snapshot1_snapshot_bundle.tar
159354880 Dec 05 06:40:40 2019 snapshot2_snapshot_bundle.tar
```

```
Usage for logflash://sup-local
759865344 bytes used
5697142784 bytes free
6457008128 bytes total
```

Display the same files using the command in this example:

```
switch# dir debug:log-snapshot-user/
159098880 Dec 05 06:40:24 2019 snapshot1_snapshot_bundle.tar
159354880 Dec 05 06:40:40 2019 snapshot2_snapshot_bundle.tar
```

```
Usage for debug://sup-local
929792 bytes used
4313088 bytes free
5242880 bytes total
```



**Note** The file name is identified at the end of the example. Each individual log file is also identified by the date and time it was generated.

Beginning with Release 10.1(1), the LC core file includes the `log-snapshot` bundle. The `log-snapshot` bundle filename is `tac_snapshot_bundle.tar.gz`. An example is shown below:

```
bash-4.2$ tar -tvf 1610003655_0x102_aclqos_log.17194.tar.gz
drwxrwxrwx root/root 0 2021-01-07 12:44 pss/
-rw-rw-rw- root/root 107 2021-01-07 12:44 pss/dev_shm_aclqos_runtime_info_lc.gz
-rw-rw-rw- root/root 107 2021-01-07 12:44 pss/dev_shm_aclqos_runtime_cfg_lc.gz
-rw-rw-rw- root/root 107 2021-01-07 12:44 pss/dev_shm_aclqos_debug.gz
-rw-rw-rw- root/root 129583 2021-01-07 12:44 pss/clqosdb_ver1_0_user.gz
-rw-rw-rw- root/root 20291 2021-01-07 12:44 pss/clqosdb_ver1_0_node.gz
-rw-rw-rw- root/root 444 2021-01-07 12:44 pss/clqosdb_ver1_0_ctrl.gz
drwxrwxrwx root/root 0 2021-01-07 12:44 proc/
-rw-rw-rw- root/root 15159 2021-01-07 12:44 0x102_aclqos_compress.17194.log.25162
-rw-rw-rw- root/root 9172392 2021-01-07 12:43 0x102_aclqos_core.17194.gz
-rw-rw-rw- root/root 43878 2021-01-07 12:44 0x102_aclqos_df_dmesg.17194.log.gz
-rw-rw-rw- root/root 93 2021-01-07 12:44 0x102_aclqos_log.17194
-rw-rw-rw- root/root 158 2021-01-07 12:44 0x102_aclqos_mcore.17194.log.gz
drwxrwxrwx root/root 0 2021-01-07 12:44 usd17194/
-rw-rw-rw- root/root 11374171 2021-01-07 12:44 tac_snapshot_bundle.tar.gz
```

## External Log File Storage

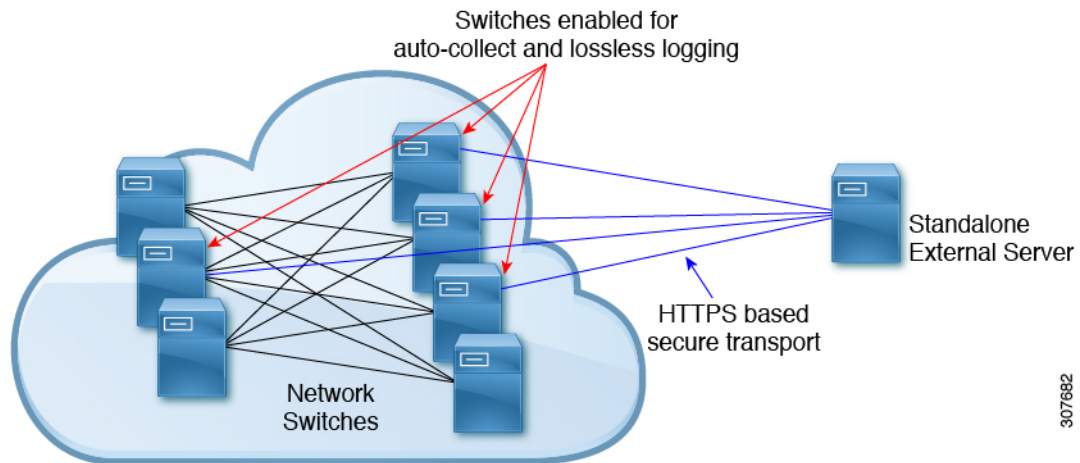
An external server solution provides the capability to store logs off-switch in a secure manner.



**Note** To create the external storage capability, contact Cisco Technical Assistance Center(TAC) to help deploy the external server solution.

The following are external log file storage capabilities:

- Enabled on-demand
- HTTPS-based transport
- Storage requirements:
  - Nonmodular switches: 300MB
  - Modular switches: 12GB (per day, per switch)
- An external server generally stores logs for 10 switches. However, there's no firm limit to the number of switches supported by an external server.



The external server solution has the following characteristics:

- Controller-less environment
- Manual management of security certificates
- Three supported use-cases:
  - Continuous collection of logs from selected switches
  - TAC-assisted effort to deploy and upload logs to Cisco servers.
  - Limited on-premise processing



**Note** Contact Cisco TAC for information regarding the setup and collection of log files in an external server.

## Verifying the Embedded Event Manager Configuration

Use one of the following commands to verify the configuration:

Command	Purpose
<b>show event manager environment</b> [ <i>variable-name</i>   <b>all</b> ]	Displays information about the event manager environment variables.
<b>show event manager event-types</b> [ <i>event</i>   <b>all</b>   <b>module slot</b> ]	Displays information about the event manager event types.
<b>show event manager history events</b> [ <b>detail</b> ] [ <b>maximum num-events</b> ] [ <b>severity {catastrophic   minor   moderate   severe}</b> ]	Displays the history of events for all policies.
<b>show event manager policy-state</b> <i>policy-name</i>	Displays information about the policy state, including thresholds.

Command	Purpose
<code>show event manager script system [policy-name   all]</code>	Displays information about the script policies.
<code>show event manager system-policy [all]</code>	Displays information about the predefined system policies.
<code>show running-config eem</code>	Displays information about the running configuration for EEM.
<code>show startup-config eem</code>	Displays information about the startup configuration for EEM.

## Configuration Examples for Embedded Event Manager

The following example shows how to override the `__lcm_module_failure` system policy by changing the threshold for only module 3 hitless upgrade failures. It also sends a syslog message. The settings in the system policy, `__lcm_module_failure`, apply in all other cases.

```
event manager applet example2 override __lcm_module_failure
event module-failure type hitless-upgrade-failure module 3 count 2
  action 1 syslog priority errors msg module 3 "upgrade is not a hitless upgrade!"
  action 2 policy-default
```

The following example shows how to override the `__ethpm_link_flap` system policy and shut down the interface:

```
event manager applet ethport override __ethpm_link_flap
  event policy-default count 2 time 1000
  action 1 cli conf t
  action 2 cli int et1/1
  action 3 cli no shut
```

The following example shows how to create an EEM policy that allows the command to execute but triggers an SNMP notification when a user enters configuration mode on the device:

```
event manager applet TEST
  event cli match "conf t"
  action 1.0 snmp-trap strdata "Configuration change"
  action 2.0 event-default
```



**Note** You must add the **event-default** action statement to the EEM policy or EEM does not allow the command to execute.

The following example shows how to correlate multiple events in an EEM policy and execute the policy based on a combination of the event triggers. In this example, the EEM policy is triggered if one of the specified syslog patterns occurs within 120 seconds.

```
event manager applet eem-correlate
  event syslog tag one pattern "copy bootflash:.* running-config.*"
  event syslog tag two pattern "copy run start"
  event syslog tag three pattern "hello"
  tag one or two or three happens 1 in 120
  action 1.0 reload module 1
```

# Additional References

## Related Documents

Related Topic	Document Title
EEM commands	<i>Cisco Nexus 3600 NX-OS Command Reference</i>

## Standards

There are no new or modified standards supported by this feature, and support for existing standards has not been modified by this feature.



## CHAPTER 13

# Configuring Onboard Failure Logging

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [About OBFL, on page 143](#)
- [Prerequisites for OBFL, on page 144](#)
- [Guidelines and Limitations for OBFL, on page 144](#)
- [Default Settings for OBFL, on page 144](#)
- [Configuring OBFL, on page 144](#)
- [Verifying the OBFL Configuration, on page 147](#)
- [Configuration Example for OBFL, on page 148](#)
- [Additional References, on page 148](#)

## About OBFL

Cisco NX-OS provides the ability to log failure data to persistent storage, which you can retrieve and display for analysis at a later time. This onboard failure logging (OBFL) feature stores failure and environmental information in nonvolatile memory on the module. The information will help analyze failed modules.

OBFL stores the following types of data:

- Time of initial power-on
- Slot number of the module in the chassis
- Initial temperature of the module
- Firmware, BIOS, FPGA, and ASIC versions
- Serial number of the module
- Stack trace for crashes
- CPU hog information
- Memory leak information
- Software error messages
- Hardware exception logs
- Environmental history

- OBFL-specific history information
- ASIC interrupt and error statistics history
- ASIC register dumps

## Prerequisites for OBFL

You must have network-admin user privileges.

## Guidelines and Limitations for OBFL

OBFL has the following guidelines and limitations:

- OBFL is enabled by default.
- OBFL flash supports a limited number of writes and erases. The more logging you enable, the faster you use up this number of writes and erases.
- The **show system reset-reason module *module num*** command does not display the reset reason in case of a module failure. Due to lack of persistent storage of the module reset-reason, this command is not effective after a reboot. Since the exception log is available in persistent storage, after a reboot, you can view the reset-reason using the **show logging onboard exception-log** command.




---

**Note** Be aware that the Cisco NX-OS commands for this feature may differ from those commands used in Cisco IOS.

---

## Default Settings for OBFL

The following table lists the default settings for OBFL parameters.

Parameters	Default
OBFL	All features enabled

## Configuring OBFL

You can configure the OBFL features on Cisco NX-OS devices.

### Before you begin

Make sure that you are in global configuration mode.



## SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **hw-module logging onboard**
3. **hw-module logging onboard counter-stats**
4. **hw-module logging onboard cpuhog**
5. **hw-module logging onboard environmental-history**
6. **hw-module logging onboard error-stats**
7. **hw-module logging onboard interrupt-stats**
8. **hw-module logging onboard module *slot***
9. **hw-module logging onboard obfl-logs**
10. (Optional) **show logging onboard**
11. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch# configure terminal switch(config)#</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	<b>hw-module logging onboard</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config)# hw-module logging onboard Module: 7 Enabling ... was successful. Module: 10 Enabling ... was successful. Module: 12 Enabling ... was successful.</pre>	Enables all OBFL features.
Step 3	<b>hw-module logging onboard counter-stats</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config)# hw-module logging onboard counter-stats Module: 7 Enabling counter-stats ... was successful. Module: 10 Enabling counter-stats ... was successful. Module: 12 Enabling counter-stats ... was successful.</pre>	Enables the OBFL counter statistics.
Step 4	<b>hw-module logging onboard cpuhog</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config)# hw-module logging onboard cpuhog Module: 7 Enabling cpu-hog ... was successful. Module: 10 Enabling cpu-hog ... was successful. Module: 12 Enabling cpu-hog ... was successful.</pre>	Enables the OBFL CPU hog events.
Step 5	<b>hw-module logging onboard environmental-history</b> <b>Example:</b>	Enables the OBFL environmental history.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<pre>switch(config)# hw-module logging onboard environmental-history Module: 7 Enabling environmental-history ... was successful. Module: 10 Enabling environmental-history ... was successful. Module: 12 Enabling environmental-history ... was successful.</pre>	
<b>Step 6</b>	<p><b>hw-module logging onboard error-stats</b></p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>switch(config)# hw-module logging onboard error-stats Module: 7 Enabling error-stats ... was successful. Module: 10 Enabling error-stats ... was successful. Module: 12 Enabling error-stats ... was successful.</pre>	Enables the OBFL error statistics.
<b>Step 7</b>	<p><b>hw-module logging onboard interrupt-stats</b></p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>switch(config)# hw-module logging onboard interrupt-stats Module: 7 Enabling interrupt-stats ... was successful. Module: 10 Enabling interrupt-stats ... was successful. Module: 12 Enabling interrupt-stats ... was successful.</pre>	Enables the OBFL interrupt statistics.
<b>Step 8</b>	<p><b>hw-module logging onboard module <i>slot</i></b></p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>switch(config)# hw-module logging onboard module 7 Module: 7 Enabling ... was successful.</pre>	Enables the OBFL information for a module.
<b>Step 9</b>	<p><b>hw-module logging onboard obfl-logs</b></p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>switch(config)# hw-module logging onboard obfl-logs Module: 7 Enabling obfl-log ... was successful. Module: 10 Enabling obfl-log ... was successful. Module: 12 Enabling obfl-log ... was successful.</pre>	Enables the boot uptime, device version, and OBFL history.
<b>Step 10</b>	<p><b>(Optional) show logging onboard</b></p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>switch(config)# show logging onboard</pre>	Displays information about OBFL.
<b>Step 11</b>	<p><b>(Optional) copy running-config startup-config</b></p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config</pre>	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

## Verifying the OBFL Configuration

To display OBFL information stored in flash on a module, perform one of the following tasks:

Command	Purpose
<b>show logging onboard boot-uptime</b>	Displays the boot and uptime information.
<b>show logging onboard counter-stats</b>	Displays statistics on all ASIC counters.
<b>show logging onboard credit-loss</b>	Displays OBFL credit loss logs.
<b>show logging onboard device-version</b>	Displays device version information.
<b>show logging onboard endtime</b>	Displays OBFL logs to a specified end time.
<b>show logging onboard environmental-history</b>	Displays environmental history.
<b>show logging onboard error-stats</b>	Displays error statistics.
<b>show logging onboard exception-log</b>	Displays exception log information.
<b>show logging onboard interrupt-stats</b>	Displays interrupt statistics.
<b>show logging onboard module <i>slot</i></b>	Displays OBFL information for a specific module.
<b>show logging onboard obfl-history</b>	Displays history information.
<b>show logging onboard obfl-logs</b>	Displays log information.
<b>show logging onboard stack-trace</b>	Displays kernel stack trace information.
<b>show logging onboard starttime</b>	Displays OBFL logs from a specified start time.
<b>show logging onboard status</b>	Displays OBFL status information.

Use the **show logging onboard status** command to display the configuration status of OBFL.

```
switch# show logging onboard status
-----
OBFL Status
-----
Switch OBFL Log: Enabled

Module: 4 OBFL Log: Enabled
cpu-hog Enabled
credit-loss Enabled
environmental-history Enabled
error-stats Enabled
exception-log Enabled
interrupt-stats Enabled
mem-leak Enabled
miscellaneous-error Enabled
obfl-log (boot-uptime/device-version/obfl-history) Enabled
register-log Enabled
request-timeout Enabled
stack-trace Enabled
system-health Enabled
timeout-drops Enabled
stack-trace Enabled

Module: 22 OBFL Log: Enabled
```

```

cpu-hog Enabled
credit-loss Enabled
environmental-history Enabled
error-stats Enabled
exception-log Enabled
interrupt-stats Enabled
mem-leak Enabled
miscellaneous-error Enabled
obfl-log (boot-uptime/device-version/obfl-history) Enabled
register-log Enabled
request-timeout Enabled
stack-trace Enabled
system-health Enabled
timeout-drops Enabled
stack-trace Enabled

```

Use the **clear logging onboard** command to clear the OBFL information for each of the **show** command options listed.

## Configuration Example for OBFL

This example shows how to enable OBFL on module 2 for environmental information:

```

switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# hw-module logging onboard module 2 environmental-history

```

## Additional References

### Related Documents

Related Topic	Document Title
Configuration files	<i>Cisco Nexus 3600 NX-OS Fundamentals Configuration Guide</i>



# CHAPTER 14

## Configuring SPAN

---

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [Information About SPAN, on page 149](#)
- [SPAN Sources, on page 149](#)
- [Characteristics of Source Ports, on page 150](#)
- [SPAN Destinations, on page 150](#)
- [Characteristics of Destination Ports, on page 150](#)
- [Guidelines and Limitations for SPAN, on page 151](#)
- [Creating or Deleting a SPAN Session, on page 152](#)
- [Configuring an Ethernet Destination Port, on page 152](#)
- [Configuring Source Ports, on page 153](#)
- [Configuring the Rate Limit for SPAN Traffic, on page 154](#)
- [Configuring Source Port Channels or VLANs, on page 155](#)
- [Configuring the Description of a SPAN Session, on page 156](#)
- [Activating a SPAN Session, on page 157](#)
- [Suspending a SPAN Session, on page 157](#)
- [Displaying SPAN Information, on page 158](#)
- [Configuration Examples for SPAN, on page 159](#)

## Information About SPAN

The Switched Port Analyzer (SPAN) feature (sometimes called port mirroring or port monitoring) selects network traffic for analysis by a network analyzer. The network analyzer can be a Cisco SwitchProbe or other Remote Monitoring (RMON) probes.

## SPAN Sources

SPAN sources refer to the interfaces from which traffic can be monitored. The Cisco Nexus device supports Ethernet, port channels, and VLANs as SPAN sources. With VLANs, all supported interfaces in the specified VLAN are included as SPAN sources. You can choose the SPAN traffic in the ingress direction, the egress direction, or both directions for Ethernet source interfaces:

- Ingress source (Rx)—Traffic entering the device through this source port is copied to the SPAN destination port.

- Egress source (Tx)—Traffic exiting the device through this source port is copied to the SPAN destination port.

You can also configure SPAN source sessions to filter ingress traffic (Rx) by using VLAN access control lists (VACLs).

## Characteristics of Source Ports

A source port, also called a monitored port, is a switched interface that you monitor for network traffic analysis. The switch supports any number of ingress source ports (up to the maximum number of available ports on the switch) and any number of source VLANs.

A source port has these characteristics:

- Can be of Ethernet, port channel, or VLAN port type.
- SPAN sources for VLANs cannot be more than 6 VLANs.
- Without an ACL filter configured, the same source can be configured for multiple sessions as long as either the direction or SPAN destination is different. However, each SPAN RX source should be configured for only one SPAN session with an ACL filter.
- Cannot be a destination port.
- Can be configured with a direction (ingress, egress, or both) to monitor. For VLAN sources, the monitored direction can only be ingress and applies to all physical ports in the group. The RX/TX option is not available for VLAN SPAN sessions.
- Ingress traffic can be filtered by using ACLs so that they mirror only those packets of information that match the ACL criteria.
- Can be in the same or different VLANs.

## SPAN Destinations

SPAN destinations refer to the interfaces that monitors source ports. The Cisco Nexus 3600 platform switches support Ethernet interfaces as SPAN destinations.

## Characteristics of Destination Ports

Each local SPAN session must have a destination port (also called a monitoring port) that receives a copy of traffic from the source ports or VLANs. A destination port has these characteristics:

- Can be any physical port. Source Ethernet and FCoE ports cannot be destination ports.
- Cannot be a source port.
- Cannot be a port channel.
- Does not participate in spanning tree while the SPAN session is active.
- Is excluded from the source list and is not monitored if it belongs to a source VLAN of any SPAN session.

- Receives copies of sent and received traffic for all monitored source ports.

## Guidelines and Limitations for SPAN



---

**Note** For scale information, see the release-specific *Cisco Nexus 3600 NX-OS Verified Scalability Guide*.

---

SPAN has the following guidelines and limitations:

- The same source (ethernet or port-channel) can be a part of multiple sessions. You can configure two monitor session with different destinations, but the same source VLAN is not supported.
- Multiple ACL filters are supported on the same source.
- An egress SPAN copy of an access port on Cisco Nexus 3600 platform switch interfaces will always have a dot1q header.
- Configuring two SPAN or ERSPAN sessions on the same source interface with only one filter is not supported. If the same source is used in multiple SPAN or ERSPAN sessions, either all the sessions must have different filters or no sessions should have filters.
- ACL filtering is supported only for Rx SPAN. Tx SPAN mirrors all traffics that egresses at the source interface.
- TCAM carving is not required for SPAN/ERSPAN on Cisco Nexus 3600 platform switches.
- ACL filtering is not supported for IPv6 and MAC ACLs because of ternary content addressable memory (TCAM) width limitations.
- The SPAN TCAM size is 128 or 256, depending on the ASIC. One entry is installed as the default and four are reserved for ERSPAN.
- If the same source is configured in more than one SPAN session, and each session has an ACL filter configured, the source interface is programmed only for the first active SPAN session. Hardware entries programmed for ACEs in other sessions is not included in this source interface.
- Both permit and deny access control entries (ACEs) are treated alike. Packets that match the ACE are mirrored irrespective of whether they have a permit or deny entry in the ACL.



---

**Note** A deny ACE does not result in a dropped packet. An ACL configured in a SPAN session determines only whether the packet is mirrored or not.

---

- It is recommended to use only the RX type of source traffic for SPAN to provide better performance because RX traffic is cut-through, whereas TX is store-and-forward. Hence, when monitoring both directions (RX and TX), the performance is not as good as when monitoring only RX. If you need to monitor both directions of traffic, you can monitor RX on more physical ports to capture both sides of the traffic.

# Creating or Deleting a SPAN Session

You create a SPAN session by assigning a session number using the **monitor session** command. If the session already exists, any additional configuration information is added to the existing session.

## SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **monitor session** *session-number*

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>monitor session</b> <i>session-number</i>	Enters the monitor configuration mode. New session configuration is added to the existing session configuration.

### Example

The following example shows how to configure a SPAN monitor session:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config) # monitor session 2
switch(config) #
```

# Configuring an Ethernet Destination Port

You can configure an Ethernet interface as a SPAN destination port.



### Note

The SPAN destination port can only be a physical port on the switch.

## SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **interface ethernet** *slot/port*
3. switch(config-if)# **switchport monitor**
4. switch(config-if)# **exit**
5. switch(config)# **monitor session** *session-number*
6. switch(config-monitor)# **destination interface ethernet** *slot/port*



## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>interface ethernet</b> <i>slot/port</i>	Enters interface configuration mode for the Ethernet interface with the specified slot and port.  <b>Note</b> To enable the <b>switchport monitor</b> command on virtual ethernet ports, you can use the <b>interface vethernet slot/port</b> command.
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config-if)# <b>switchport monitor</b>	Enters monitor mode for the specified Ethernet interface. Priority flow control is disabled when the port is configured as a SPAN destination.
<b>Step 4</b>	switch(config-if)# <b>exit</b>	Reverts to global configuration mode.
<b>Step 5</b>	switch(config)# <b>monitor session</b> <i>session-number</i>	Enters monitor configuration mode for the specified SPAN session.
<b>Step 6</b>	switch(config-monitor)# <b>destination interface ethernet</b> <i>slot/port</i>	Configures the Ethernet SPAN destination port.  <b>Note</b> To enable the virtual ethernet port as destination interface in the monitor configuration, you can use the <b>destination interface vethernet slot/port</b> command.

**Example**

The following example shows how to configure an Ethernet SPAN destination port (HIF):

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface ethernet100/1/24
switch(config-if)# switchport monitor
switch(config-if)# exit
switch(config)# monitor session 1
switch(config-monitor)# destination interface ethernet100/1/24
switch(config-monitor)#
```

The following example shows how to configure a virtual ethernet (VETH) SPAN destination port:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface vethernet10
switch(config-if)# switchport monitor
switch(config-if)# exit
switch(config)# monitor session 2
switch(config-monitor)# destination interface vethernet10
switch(config-monitor)#
```

## Configuring Source Ports

Source ports can only be Ethernet ports.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config) # **monitor session** *session-number*
3. switch(config-monitor) # **source interface** *type slot/port* [rx | tx | both]

**DETAILED STEPS**

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config) # <b>monitor session</b> <i>session-number</i>	Enters monitor configuration mode for the specified monitoring session.
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config-monitor) # <b>source interface</b> <i>type slot/port</i> [rx   tx   both]	Adds an Ethernet SPAN source port and specifies the traffic direction in which to duplicate packets. You can enter a range of Ethernet, Fibre Channel, or virtual Fibre Channel ports. You can specify the traffic direction to duplicate as ingress (Rx), egress (Tx), or both. By default, the direction is both.

**Example**

The following example shows how to configure an Ethernet SPAN source port:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# monitor session 2
switch(config-monitor)# filter access-group acl1
switch(config-monitor)# source interface ethernet 1/16
switch(config-monitor)#
```

## Configuring the Rate Limit for SPAN Traffic

By configuring a rate limit for SPAN traffic to 1Gbps across the entire monitor session, you can avoid impacting the monitored production traffic.

- When spanning more than 1Gbps to a 1 Gb SPAN destination interface, SPAN source traffic will not drop.
- When spanning more than 6 Gbps (but less than 10Gbps) to a 10Gb SPAN destination interface, the SPAN traffic is limited to 1Gbps even though the destination/sniffer is capable of 10Gbps.
- SPAN is rate-limited to 5 Gbps for every 8 ports (one ASIC).
- RX-SPAN is rate-limited to 0.71 Gbps per port when the RX-traffic on the port exceeds 5 Gbps.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **interface ethernet** *slot/port*

3. switch(config-if)# **switchport monitor rate-limit 1G**
4. switch(config-if)# **exit**

#### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>interface ethernet</b> <i>slot/port</i>	Enters interface configuration mode for the specified Ethernet interface selected by the slot and port values. <b>Note</b> If this is a QSFP+ GEM, the <i>slot/port</i> syntax is <i>slot/QSFP-module/port</i> .
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config-if)# <b>switchport monitor rate-limit 1G</b>	Specifies that the rate limit is 1 Gbps. <b>Note</b> This command is not supported on the Cisco Nexus N3K-C36180YC-R platform switch.
<b>Step 4</b>	switch(config-if)# <b>exit</b>	Reverts to global configuration mode.

#### Example

This example shows how to limit the bandwidth on Ethernet interface 1/2 to 1 Gbps:

```
switch(config)# interface ethernet 1/2
switch(config-if)# switchport monitor rate-limit 1G
switch(config-if)#
```

## Configuring Source Port Channels or VLANs

You can configure the source channels for a SPAN session. These ports can be port channels and VLANs. The monitored direction can be ingress, egress, or both and applies to all physical ports in the group.

#### SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config) # **monitor session** *session-number*
3. switch(config-monitor) # **filter access-group** *access-map*
4. switch(config-monitor) # **source** {**interface** {**port-channel**} *channel-number* [**rx** | **tx** | **both**] | **vlan** *vlan-range*}

#### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config) # <b>monitor session</b> <i>session-number</i>	Enters monitor configuration mode for the specified SPAN session.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config-monitor) # <b>filter access-group</b> <i>access-map</i>	Filters ingress traffic at source ports based on the ACL list. Only packets that match the access-list used by access-map are spanned.
<b>Step 4</b>	switch(config-monitor) # <b>source</b> { <b>interface</b> { <b>port-channel</b> } <i>channel-number</i> [ <b>rx</b>   <b>tx</b>   <b>both</b> ]   <b>vlan</b> <i>vlan-range</i> }	Configures port channel or VLAN sources. For VLAN sources, the monitored direction is implicit.

### Example

The following example shows how to configure a port channel SPAN source:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# monitor session 2
switch(config-monitor)# filter access-group acl1
switch(config-monitor)# source interface port-channel 1 rx
switch(config-monitor)# source interface port-channel 3 tx
switch(config-monitor)# source interface port-channel 5 both
switch(config-monitor)#
```

The following example shows how to configure a VLAN SPAN source:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# monitor session 2
switch(config-monitor)# filter access-group acl1
switch(config-monitor)# source vlan 1
switch(config-monitor)#
```

## Configuring the Description of a SPAN Session

For ease of reference, you can provide a descriptive name for a SPAN session.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config) # **monitor session** *session-number*
3. switch(config-monitor) # **description** *description*

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config) # <b>monitor session</b> <i>session-number</i>	Enters monitor configuration mode for the specified SPAN session.
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config-monitor) # <b>description</b> <i>description</i>	Creates a descriptive name for the SPAN session.

### Example

The following example shows how to configure a SPAN session description:

```

switch# configure terminal
switch(config) # monitor session 2
switch(config-monitor) # description monitoring ports eth2/2-eth2/4
switch(config-monitor) #

```

## Activating a SPAN Session

The default is to keep the session state shut. You can open a session that duplicates packets from sources to destinations.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config) # **no monitor session {all | session-number} shut**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config) # <b>no monitor session {all   session-number} shut</b>	Opens the specified SPAN session or all sessions.

### Example

The following example shows how to activate a SPAN session:

```

switch# configure terminal
switch(config) # no monitor session 3 shut

```

## Suspending a SPAN Session

By default, the session state is **shut**.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config) # **monitor session {all | session-number} shut**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config) # <b>monitor session</b> {all   <i>session-number</i> } <b>shut</b>	Suspends the specified SPAN session or all sessions.

**Example**

The following example shows how to suspend a SPAN session:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config) # monitor session 3 shut
switch(config) #
```

## Displaying SPAN Information

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. switch# **show monitor** [session {all | *session-number* | range *session-range*} [brief]]

**DETAILED STEPS**

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>show monitor</b> [session {all   <i>session-number</i>   range <i>session-range</i> } [brief]]	Displays the SPAN configuration.

**Example**

The following example shows how to display SPAN session information:

```
switch# show monitor
SESSION  STATE      REASON                DESCRIPTION
-----  -
2        up         The session is up
3        down      Session suspended
4        down      No hardware resource
```

The following example shows how to display SPAN session details:

```
switch# show monitor session 2
session 2
-----
type           : local
state          : up
source intf    :

source VLANs   :
  rx           : 100
  tx           :
  both         :
destination ports : Eth3/1
```

# Configuration Examples for SPAN

## Configuration Example for a SPAN Session

To configure a SPAN session, follow these steps:

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. Configure destination ports in access mode and enable SPAN monitoring.
2. Configure a SPAN session.

### DETAILED STEPS

---

**Step 1** Configure destination ports in access mode and enable SPAN monitoring.

**Example:**

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface ethernet 2/5
switch(config-if)# switchport
switch(config-if)# switchport monitor
switch(config-if)# no shut
switch(config-if)# exit
switch(config)#
```

**Step 2** Configure a SPAN session.

**Example:**

```
switch(config)# no monitor session 3
switch(config)# monitor session 3
switch(config-monitor)# source interface ethernet 2/1-3, ethernet 3/1 rx
switch(config-monitor)# source interface port-channel 2
switch(config-monitor)# source interface sup-eth 0 both
switch(config-monitor)# source vlan 3, 6-8 rx
switch(config-monitor)# source interface ethernet 101/1/1-3
switch(config-monitor)# destination interface ethernet 2/5
switch(config-monitor)# no shut
switch(config-monitor)# exit
switch(config)# show monitor session 3
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
```

---

## Configuration Example for a Unidirectional SPAN Session

To configure a unidirectional SPAN session, follow these steps:

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. Configure destination ports in access mode and enable SPAN monitoring.

## 2. Configure a SPAN session.

### DETAILED STEPS

**Step 1** Configure destination ports in access mode and enable SPAN monitoring.

**Example:**

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface ethernet 2/5
switch(config-if)# switchport
switch(config-if)# switchport monitor
switch(config-if)# no shut
switch(config-if)# exit
switch(config)#
```

**Step 2** Configure a SPAN session.

**Example:**

```
switch(config)# no monitor session 3
switch(config)# monitor session 3 rx
switch(config-monitor)# source interface ethernet 2/1-3, ethernet 3/1 rx
switch(config-monitor)# filter vlan 3-5, 7
switch(config-monitor)# destination interface ethernet 2/5
switch(config-monitor)# no shut
switch(config-monitor)# exit
switch(config)# show monitor session 3
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
```

## Configuration Example for a SPAN ACL

This example shows how to configure a SPAN ACL:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# ip access-list match_11_pkts
switch(config-acl)# permit ip 11.0.0.0 0.255.255.255 any
switch(config-acl)# exit
switch(config)# ip access-list match_12_pkts
switch(config-acl)# permit ip 12.0.0.0 0.255.255.255 any
switch(config-acl)# exit
switch(config)# vlan access-map span_filter 5
switch(config-access-map)# match ip address match_11_pkts
switch(config-access-map)# action forward
switch(config-access-map)# exit
switch(config)# vlan access-map span_filter 10
switch(config-access-map)# match ip address match_12_pkts
switch(config-access-map)# action forward
switch(config-access-map)# exit
switch(config)# monitor session 1
switch(config-erspan-src)# filter access-group span_filter
```



## Configuration Examples for UDF-Based SPAN

This example shows how to configure UDF-based SPAN to match on the inner TCP flags of an encapsulated IP-in-IP packet using the following match criteria:

- Outer source IP address: 10.0.0.2
- Inner TCP flags: Urgent TCP flag is set
- Bytes: Eth Hdr (14) + Outer IP (20) + Inner IP (20) + Inner TCP (20, but TCP flags at 13th byte)
- Offset from packet-start: 14 + 20 + 20 + 13 = 67
- UDF match value: 0x20
- UDF mask: 0xFF

```

udf udf_tcpflags packet-start 67 1
hardware access-list tcam region racl qualify udf udf_tcpflags
copy running-config startup-config
reload
ip access-list acl-udf
  permit ip 10.0.0.2/32 any udf udf_tcpflags 0x20 0xff
monitor session 1
  source interface Ethernet 1/1
  filter access-group acl-udf

```

This example shows how to configure UDF-based SPAN to match regular IP packets with a packet signature (DEADBEEF) at 6 bytes after a Layer 4 header start using the following match criteria:

- Outer source IP address: 10.0.0.2
- Inner TCP flags: Urgent TCP flag is set
- Bytes: Eth Hdr (14) + IP (20) + TCP (20) + Payload: 112233445566DEADBEEF7788
- Offset from Layer 4 header start: 20 + 6 = 26
- UDF match value: 0xDEADBEEF (split into two-byte chunks and two UDFs)
- UDF mask: 0xFFFFFFFF

```

udf udf_pktsig_msb header outer 14 26 2
udf udf_pktsig_lsb header outer 14 28 2
hardware access-list tcam region racl qualify udf udf_pktsig_msb udf_pktsig_lsb
copy running-config startup-config
reload
ip access-list acl-udf-pktsig
  permit udf udf_pktsig_msb 0xDEAD 0xFFFF udf udf_pktsig_lsb 0xBEEF 0xFFFF
monitor session 1
  source interface Ethernet 1/1
  filter access-group acl-udf-pktsig

```





## CHAPTER 15

# Configuring ERSPAN

---

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [About ERSPAN, on page 163](#)
- [Prerequisites for ERSPAN, on page 164](#)
- [Guidelines and Limitations for ERSPAN, on page 164](#)
- [Default Settings for ERSPAN, on page 167](#)
- [Configuring ERSPAN, on page 167](#)
- [Configuration Examples for ERSPAN, on page 180](#)
- [Additional References, on page 182](#)

## About ERSPAN

ERSPAN consists of an ERSPAN source session, routable ERSPAN generic routing encapsulation (GRE)-encapsulated traffic, and an ERSPAN destination session. You can separately configure ERSPAN source sessions and destination sessions on different switches. You can also configure ERSPAN source sessions to filter ingress traffic by using ACLs.

## ERSPAN Sources

The interfaces from which traffic can be monitored are called ERSPAN sources. Sources designate the traffic to monitor and whether to copy ingress, egress, or both directions of traffic. ERSPAN sources include the following:

- Ethernet ports, port channels, and subinterfaces.
- VLANs—When a VLAN is specified as an ERSPAN source, all supported interfaces in the VLAN are ERSPAN sources.

ERSPAN source ports have the following characteristics:

- A port configured as a source port cannot also be configured as a destination port.
- ERSPAN does not monitor any packets that are generated by the supervisor, regardless of their source.
- Ingress traffic at source ports can be filtered by using ACLs so that they mirror only those packets of information that match the ACL criteria.

## Multiple ERSPAN Sessions

Although you can define up to 18 ERSPAN sessions, only a maximum of four ERSPAN or SPAN sessions can be operational simultaneously. If both receive and transmit sources are configured in the same session, only two ERSPAN or SPAN sessions can be operational simultaneously. You can shut down any unused ERSPAN sessions.

For information about shutting down ERSPAN sessions, see [Shutting Down or Activating an ERSPAN Session, on page 178](#).

## High Availability

The ERSPAN feature supports stateless and stateful restarts. After a reboot or supervisor switchover, the running configuration is applied.

## Prerequisites for ERSPAN

ERSPAN has the following prerequisite:

You must first configure the Ethernet interfaces for ports on each device to support the desired ERSPAN configuration. For more information, see the Interfaces configuration guide for your platform.

## Guidelines and Limitations for ERSPAN



---

**Note** For scale information, see the release-specific *Cisco Nexus 3600 NX-OS Verified Scalability Guide*.

---

ERSPAN has the following configuration guidelines and limitations:

- The same source can be part of multiple sessions.
- Multiple ACL filters are supported on the same source.
- ERSPAN supports the following:
  - From 4 to 6 tunnels
  - Nontunnel packets
  - IPinIP tunnels
  - IPv4 tunnels (limited)
  - ERSPAN source session type (packets are encapsulated as generic routing encapsulation (GRE)-tunnel packets and sent on the IP network. However, unlike other Cisco devices, the ERSPAN header is not added to the packet.)
- ERSPAN packets are dropped if the encapsulated mirror packet fails Layer 2 MTU checks.
- There is a 112-byte limit for egress encapsulation. Packets that exceed this limit are dropped. This scenario might be encountered when tunnels and mirroring are intermixed.

- ERSPAN sessions are shared with local sessions. A maximum of 18 sessions can be configured; however only a maximum of four sessions can be operational at the same time. If both receive and transmit sources are configured in the same session, only two sessions can be operational.
- ERSPAN and ERSPAN ACLs are not supported for packets that are generated by the supervisor.
- ERSPAN and ERSPAN with ACL filtering are not supported for packets that are generated by the supervisor.
- ACL filtering is supported only for Rx ERSPAN. Tx ERSPAN that mirrors all traffic that is egressed at the source interface.
- ACL filtering is not supported for IPv6 and MAC ACLs because of TCAM width limitations.
- If the same source is configured in more than one ERSPAN session, and each session has an ACL filter that is configured, the source interface is programmed only for the first active ERSPAN session. The ACEs that belong to the other sessions will not have this source interface programmed.
- If you configure an ERSPAN session and a local SPAN session (with filter access-group and allow-sharing option) to use the same source, the local SPAN session goes down when you save the configuration and reload the switch.
- The drop action is not supported with the VLAN access-map configuration with the filter access-group for a monitor session. The monitor session goes into an error state if the VLAN access-map with a drop action is configured with the filter access-group in the monitor session.
- Both permit and deny ACEs are treated alike. Packets that match the ACE are mirrored irrespective of whether they have a permit or deny entry in the ACL.
- ERSPAN is not supported for management ports.
- A destination port can be configured in only one ERSPAN session at a time.
- You cannot configure a port as both a source and destination port.
- A single ERSPAN session can include mixed sources in any combination of the following:
  - Ethernet ports or port channels but not subinterfaces.
  - VLANs or port channels, which can be assigned to port channel subinterfaces.
  - Port channels to the control plane CPU.



---

**Note** ERSPAN does not monitor any packets that are generated by the supervisor, regardless of their source.

---

- Destination ports do not participate in any spanning tree instance or Layer 3 protocols.
- When an ERSPAN session contains source ports that are monitored in the transmit or transmit and receive direction, packets that these ports receive may be replicated to the ERSPAN destination port although the packets are not actually transmitted on the source ports. Some examples of this behavior on source ports are as follows:
  - Traffic that results from flooding
  - Broadcast and multicast traffic

- For VLAN ERSPAN sessions with both ingress and egress that is configured, two packets (one from ingress and one from egress) are forwarded from the destination port if the packets get switched on the same VLAN.
- VLAN ERSPAN monitors only the traffic that leaves or enters Layer 2 ports in the VLAN.
- When the Cisco Nexus 3600 platform switch is the ERSPAN destination, GRE headers are not stripped off before sending mirrored packets out of the terminating point. Packets are sent along with the GRE headers as GRE packets and the original packet as the GRE payload.
- The egress interface for the ERSPAN source session is now printed in the output of the **show monitor session <session-number>** CLI command. The egress interface can be a physical port or a port-channel. For ECMP, one interface among the ECMP members is displayed in the output. This particular interface is used for the traffic egress.
- TCAM carving is not required for SPAN/ERSPAN on Cisco Nexus 3600 platform switches.
- You can view the SPAN/ERSPAN ACL statistics using the **show monitor filter-list** command. The output of the command displays all the entries along with the statistics from the SPAN TCAM. The ACL name is not printed, but only the entries are printed in the output. You can clear the statistics using the **clear monitor filter-list statistics** command. The output is similar to **show ip access-list** command. The Cisco Nexus 3600 platform switch does not provide support per ACL level statistics. This enhancement is supported for both local SPAN and ERSPAN.
- The traffic to and/or from the CPU is spanned. It is similar to any other interface SPAN. This enhancement is supported only in local SPAN. It is not supported with ACL source. The Cisco Nexus 3600 platform switch does not span the packets with (RCPU.dest\_port != 0) header that is sent out from the CPU.
- For SPAN forward drop traffic, SPAN only the packets that get dropped due to various reasons in the forwarding plane. This enhancement is supported only for ERSPAN Source session. It is not supported along with SPAN ACL, Source VLAN, and Source interface. Three ACL entries are installed to SPAN dropped traffic. Priority can be set for the drop entries to have a higher or lower priority than the SPAN ACL entries and the VLAN SPAN entries of the other monitor sessions. By default, the drop entries have a higher priority.
- SPAN UDF (User-Defined Field) based ACL support
  - You can match any packet header or payload (certain length limitations) in the first 128 bytes of the packet.
  - You can define the UDFs with particular offset and length to match.
  - You can match the length as 1 or 2 bytes only.
  - Maximum of 8 UDFs are supported.
  - Additional UDF match criteria is added to ACL.
  - The UDF match criteria can be configured only for SPAN ACL. This enhancement is not supported for other ACL features, for example, RACL, PACL, and VACL.
  - Each ACE can have up to 8 UDF match criteria.
  - The UDF and http-redirect configuration should not coexist in the same ACL.
  - The UDF names need to be qualified for the SPAN TCAM.
  - The UDFs are effective only if they are qualified by the SPAN TCAM.

- The configuration for the UDF definition and the UDF name qualification in the SPAN TCAM require the use of **copy r s** command and reload.
  - The UDF match is supported for both Local SPAN and ERSPAN Src sessions.
  - The UDF name can have a maximum length of 16 characters.
  - The UDF offset starts from 0 (zero). If offset is specified as an odd number, 2 UDFs are used in the hardware for one UDF definition in the software. The configuration is rejected if the number of UDFs usage in the hardware goes beyond 8.
  - The UDF match requires the SPAN TCAM region to go double-wide. Therefore, you have to reduce the other TCAM regions' size to make space for SPAN.
  - The SPAN UDFs are not supported in tap-aggregation mode.
- If a sup-eth source interface is configured in the erspan-src session, the acl-span cannot be added as a source into that session and vice versa.
  - IPv6 User Defined Field (UDF) on ERSPAN support
  - ERSPAN source and ERSPAN destination sessions must use dedicated loopback interfaces. Such loopback interfaces should not be having any control plane protocols.

## Default Settings for ERSPAN

The following table lists the default settings for ERSPAN parameters.

*Table 15: Default ERSPAN Parameters*

Parameters	Default
ERSPAN sessions	Created in the shut state.

## Configuring ERSPAN

### Configuring an ERSPAN Source Session

You can configure an ERSPAN session on the local device only. By default, ERSPAN sessions are created in the shut state.

For sources, you can specify Ethernet ports, port channels, and VLANs. A single ERSPAN session can include mixed sources in any combination of Ethernet ports or VLANs.




---

**Note** ERSPAN does not monitor any packets that are generated by the supervisor, regardless of their source.

---

## SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **monitor erspan origin ip-address** *ip-address* **global**
3. **no monitor session** {*session-number* | **all**}
4. **monitor session** {*session-number* | **all**} **type erspan-source**
5. **description** *description*
6. **filter access-group** *acl-name*
7. **source** {**interface** *type* [**rx** | **tx** | **both**] | **vlan** {*number* | *range*} [**rx**]}
8. (Optional) Repeat Step 6 to configure all ERSPAN sources.
9. (Optional) **filter access-group** *acl-filter*
10. **destination ip** *ip-address*
11. (Optional) **ip ttl** *ttl-number*
12. (Optional) **ip dscp** *dscp-number*
13. **no shut**
14. (Optional) **show monitor session** {**all** | *session-number* | **range** *session-range*}
15. (Optional) **show running-config monitor**
16. (Optional) **show startup-config monitor**
17. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch# config t switch(config)#</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>monitor erspan origin ip-address</b> <i>ip-address</i> <b>global</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config)# monitor erspan origin ip-address 10.0.0.1 global</pre>	Configures the ERSPAN global origin IP address.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>no monitor session</b> { <i>session-number</i>   <b>all</b> } <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config)# no monitor session 3</pre>	Clears the configuration of the specified ERSPAN session. The new session configuration is added to the existing session configuration.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>monitor session</b> { <i>session-number</i>   <b>all</b> } <b>type erspan-source</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config)# monitor session 3 type erspan-source switch(config-erspan-src)#</pre>	Configures an ERSPAN source session.



	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>description</b> <i>description</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-erspan-src)# description erspan_src_session_3</pre>	Configures a description for the session. By default, no description is defined. The description can be up to 32 alphanumeric characters.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>filter access-group</b> <i>acl-name</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-erspan-src)# filter access-group acl1</pre>	Filters ingress traffic at source ports based on the ACL list. Only packets that match the access list are spanned. The <i>acl-name</i> is an IP access-list, but not an access-map.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>source</b> { <b>interface type</b> [ <b>rx</b>   <b>tx</b>   <b>both</b> ]   <b>vlan</b> { <i>number</i>   <i>range</i> } [ <b>rx</b> ]} <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-erspan-src)# source interface ethernet 2/1-3, ethernet 3/1 rx</pre> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-erspan-src)# source interface port-channel 2</pre> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-erspan-src)# source interface sup-eth 0 both</pre> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-monitor)# source interface ethernet 101/1/1-3</pre>	
<b>Step 8</b>	(Optional) Repeat Step 6 to configure all ERSPAN sources.	—
<b>Step 9</b>	(Optional) <b>filter access-group</b> <i>acl-filter</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-erspan-src)# filter access-group ACL1</pre>	Associates an ACL with the ERSPAN session. <b>Note</b> You can create an ACL using the standard ACL configuration process. For more information, see the Cisco Nexus NX-OS Security Configuration Guide for your platform.
<b>Step 10</b>	<b>destination ip</b> <i>ip-address</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-erspan-src)# destination ip 10.1.1.1</pre>	Configures the destination IP address in the ERSPAN session. Only one destination IP address is supported per ERSPAN source session.
<b>Step 11</b>	(Optional) <b>ip ttl</b> <i>ttl-number</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-erspan-src)# ip ttl 25</pre>	Configures the IP time-to-live (TTL) value for the ERSPAN traffic. The range is from 1 to 255.
<b>Step 12</b>	(Optional) <b>ip dscp</b> <i>dscp-number</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-erspan-src)# ip dscp 42</pre>	Configures the differentiated services code point (DSCP) value of the packets in the ERSPAN traffic. The range is from 0 to 63.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 13</b>	<b>no shut</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-erspan-src)# no shut</pre>	Enables the ERSPAN source session. By default, the session is created in the shut state.  <b>Note</b> Only two ERSPAN source sessions can be running simultaneously.
<b>Step 14</b>	(Optional) <b>show monitor session</b> {all   <i>session-number</i>   range <i>session-range</i> } <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-erspan-src)# show monitor session 3</pre>	Displays the ERSPAN session configuration.
<b>Step 15</b>	(Optional) <b>show running-config monitor</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-erspan-src)# show running-config monitor</pre>	Displays the running ERSPAN configuration.
<b>Step 16</b>	(Optional) <b>show startup-config monitor</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-erspan-src)# show startup-config monitor</pre>	Displays the ERSPAN startup configuration.
<b>Step 17</b>	(Optional) <b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-erspan-src)# copy running-config startup-config</pre>	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

## Configuring SPAN Forward Drop Traffic for ERSPAN Source Session

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **monitor session** {*session-number* | all} **type erspan-source**
3. **vrf** *vrf-name*
4. **destination ip** *ip-address*
5. **source forward-drops rx** [*priority-low*]
6. **no shut**
7. (Optional) **show monitor session** {all | *session-number* | range *session-range*}

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch# config t switch(config)#</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	<b>monitor session</b> { <i>session-number</i>   <b>all</b> } <b>type erspan-source</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config)# monitor session 1 type erspan-source switch(config-erspan-src)#</pre>	Configures an ERSPAN source session.
Step 3	<b>vrf</b> <i>vrf-name</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-erspan-src)# vrf default</pre>	Configures the VRF that the ERSPAN source session uses for traffic forwarding.
Step 4	<b>destination ip</b> <i>ip-address</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-erspan-src)# destination ip 10.1.1.1</pre>	Configures the destination IP address in the ERSPAN session. Only one destination IP address is supported per ERSPAN source session.
Step 5	<b>source forward-drops rx</b> [ <i>priority-low</i> ] <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-erspan-src)# source forward-drops rx [priority-low]</pre>	Configures the SPAN forward drop traffic for the ERSPAN source session. When configured as a low priority, this SPAN ACE matching drop condition takes less priority over any other SPAN ACEs configured by the interface ACL SPAN or VLAN ACL SPAN. Without the priority-low keyword, these drop ACEs take high priority compared to the regular interface or the VLAN SPAN ACLs. The priority matters only when the packet matching drop ACEs and the interface/VLAN SPAN ACLs are configured.
Step 6	<b>no shut</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-erspan-src)# no shut</pre>	Enables the ERSPAN source session. By default, the session is created in the shut state.  <b>Note</b> Only two ERSPAN source sessions can be running simultaneously.
Step 7	(Optional) <b>show monitor session</b> { <b>all</b>   <i>session-number</i>   <b>range session-range</b> } <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-erspan-src)# show monitor session 3</pre>	Displays the ERSPAN session configuration.

### Example

```
switch# config t
switch(config)# monitor session 1 type erspan-source
switch(config-erspan-src)# vrf default
switch(config-erspan-src)# destination ip 40.1.1.1
switch(config-erspan-src)# source forward-drops rx
switch(config-erspan-src)# no shut
switch(config-erspan-src)# show monitor session 1

switch# config t
switch(config)# monitor session 1 type erspan-source
switch(config-erspan-src)# vrf default
switch(config-erspan-src)# destination ip 40.1.1.1
switch(config-erspan-src)# source forward-drops rx priority-low
```

```
switch(config-erspan-src)# no shut
switch(config-erspan-src)# show monitor session 1
```

## Configuring an ERSPAN ACL

You can create an IPv4 ERSPAN ACL on the device and add rules to it.

### Before you begin

To modify the DSCP value or the GRE protocol, you need to allocate a new destination monitor session. A maximum of four destination monitor sessions are supported.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **ip access-list *acl-name***
3. [*sequence-number*] {**permit** | **deny**} *protocol source destination* [**set-erspan-dscp** *dscp-value*] [**set-erspan-gre-PROTO** *protocol-value*]
4. (Optional) **show ip access-lists *name***
5. (Optional) **show monitor session** {**all** | *session-number* | **range** *session-range*} [**brief**]
6. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b> switch# configure terminal switch(config)#	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>ip access-list <i>acl-name</i></b>  <b>Example:</b> switch(config)# ip access-list erspan-acl switch(config-acl)#	Creates the ERSPAN ACL and enters IP ACL configuration mode. The <i>acl-name</i> argument can be up to 64 characters.
<b>Step 3</b>	[ <i>sequence-number</i> ] { <b>permit</b>   <b>deny</b> } <i>protocol source destination</i> [ <b>set-erspan-dscp</b> <i>dscp-value</i> ] [ <b>set-erspan-gre-PROTO</b> <i>protocol-value</i> ]  <b>Example:</b> switch(config-acl)# permit ip 192.168.2.0/24 any set-erspan-dscp 40 set-erspan-gre-PROTO 5555	Creates a rule in the ERSPAN ACL. You can create many rules. The <i>sequence-number</i> argument can be a whole number between 1 and 4294967295.  The <b>permit</b> and <b>deny</b> commands support many ways of identifying traffic.  The <b>set-erspan-dscp</b> option sets the DSCP value in the ERSPAN outer IP header. The range for the DSCP value is from 0 to 63. The DSCP value configured in the ERSPAN ACL overrides the value configured in the monitor session. If you do not include this option in the ERSPAN ACL, 0 or the DSCP value configured in the monitor session will be set.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<p>The <b>set-erspan-gre-proto</b> option sets the protocol value in the ERSPAN GRE header. The range for the protocol value is from 0 to 65535. If you do not include this option in the ERSPAN ACL, the default value of 0x88be will be set as the protocol in the GRE header for ERSPAN-encapsulated packets.</p> <p>Each access control entry (ACE) with the <b>set-erspan-gre-proto</b> or <b>set-erspan-dscp</b> action consumes one destination monitor session. A maximum of three ACEs with one of these actions is supported per ERSPAN ACL. For example, you can configure one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• One ERSPAN session with an ACL having a maximum of three ACEs with the <b>set-erspan-gre-proto</b> or <b>set-erspan-dscp</b> action</li> <li>• One ERSPAN session with an ACL having two ACEs with the <b>set-erspan-gre-proto</b> or <b>set-erspan-dscp</b> action and one additional local or ERSPAN session</li> <li>• A maximum of two ERSPAN sessions with an ACL having one ACE with the <b>set-erspan-gre-proto</b> or <b>set-erspan-dscp</b> action</li> </ul>
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) <b>show ip access-lists</b> <i>name</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-acl)# show ip access-lists erspan-acl</pre>	Displays the ERSPAN ACL configuration.
<b>Step 5</b>	(Optional) <b>show monitor session</b> { <b>all</b>   <i>session-number</i>   <b>range</b> <i>session-range</i> } [ <b>brief</b> ] <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-acl)# show monitor session 1</pre>	Displays the ERSPAN session configuration.
<b>Step 6</b>	(Optional) <b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-acl)# copy running-config startup-config</pre>	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

## Configuring User Defined Field (UDF) Based ACL Support

You can configure User Defined Field (UDF) based ACL support on Cisco Nexus 3600 platform switches. See the following steps to configure ERSPAN based on UDF. See the Guidelines and Limitations for ERSPAN section for more information.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**

2. switch(config)# **udf** <udf-name> <packet start> <offset> <length>
3. switch(config)# **udf** <udf-name> header <Layer3/Layer4> <offset> <length>
4. switch(config)# **hardware profile tcam region span qualify udf** <name1>..... <name8>
5. switch(config)# **permit** ..... <regular ACE match criteria> **udf** <name1> <val> <mask> ..... <name8> <val> <mask>
6. switch(config)# **show monitor session** <session-number>

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>udf</b> <udf-name> <packet start> <offset> <length>  <b>Example:</b>  (config)# udf udf1 packet-start 10 2 (config)# udf udf2 packet-start 50 2	Defines the UDF.  <b>Note</b> You can define multiple UDFs but it is recommended to configure only the required UDFs. This configuration takes affect only after attaching the UDFs to a TCAM region and rebooting the box, as the UDFs are added to a region's qualifier set at TCAM carving time (boot up time).
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config)# <b>udf</b> <udf-name> header <Layer3/Layer4> <offset> <length>  <b>Example:</b>  (config)# udf udf3 header outer 14 0 1 (config)# udf udf3 header outer 14 10 2 (config)# udf udf3 header outer 14 50 1	Defines the UDF.
<b>Step 4</b>	switch(config)# <b>hardware profile tcam region span qualify udf</b> <name1>..... <name8>  <b>Example:</b>  (config)# <b>hardware profile tcam region span qualify udf udf1 udf2 udf3 udf4 udf5</b> [SUCCESS] Changes to UDF qualifier set will be applicable only after reboot. You need to 'copy run start' and 'reload' config)#	Configure UDF Qualification in SPAN TCAM. Add the UDFs to qualifier set for a TCAM region at TCAM carving time (happens at boot up time). The configuration allows maximum 4 UDFs that can be attached to a span region, all UDFs listed in a single command for a region. A new configuration for a region replaces the current configuration, but note that it needs a reboot for the configuration to come to the effect.  When the UDF qualifier is added to the SPAN TCAM, the TCAM region expands from single wide to double wide. Make sure enough free space (128 more single wide entries) is available for the expansion or else the command gets rejected. Re-enter the command after creating the space by reducing TCAM space from the unused regions. Once the UDFs are detached from SPAN/TCAM region using the <b>no hardware profile tcam region span qualify udf</b> <name1> ..<name8> command, the SPAN TCAM region is considered as a single wide entry.
<b>Step 5</b>	switch(config)# <b>permit</b> ..... <regular ACE match criteria> <b>udf</b> <name1> <val> <mask> ..... <name8> <val> <mask>	Configure an ACL with UDF match.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>(config)# ip access-list test 10 permit ip any any udf udf1 0x1234 0xffff udf3 0x56 0xff 30 permit ip any any dscp af11 udf udf5 0x22 0x22 config)#</pre>	
<b>Step 6</b>	<pre>switch(config)# show monitor session &lt;session-number&gt;</pre> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>(config)# show monitor session 1 session 1 ----- type           : erspan-source state          : up vrf-name       : default destination-ip : 40.1.1.1 ip-ttl         : 255 ip-dscp        : 0 acl-name       : test origin-ip      : 100.1.1.10 (global) source intf    :   rx           : Eth1/20   tx           : Eth1/20   both         : Eth1/20 source VLANs   :   rx           : source fwd drops : egress-intf    : Eth1/23 switch# config)#</pre>	<p>Displays the ACL using the <b>show monitor session &lt;session-number&gt;</b> command. You can check if the SPAN TCAM region is carved or not using the BCM SHELL command.</p>

## Configuring IPv6 User Defined Field (UDF) on ERSPAN

You can configure IPv6 User Defined Field (UDF) on ERSPAN on Cisco Nexus 3600 platform switches. See the following steps to configure ERSPAN based on IPv6 UDF. See the Guidelines and Limitations for ERSPAN section for more information

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **udf** < udf -name> <packet start> <offset> <length>
3. switch(config)# **udf** < udf -name> header <Layer3/Layer4> <offset> <length>
4. switch(config)# **hardware profile tcam region ipv6-span-l2 512**
5. switch(config)# **hardware profile tcam region ipv6-span 512**
6. switch(config)# **hardware profile tcam region span spanv6 qualify udf** <name1>..... <name8>
7. switch(config)# **hardware profile tcam region span spanv6-12 qualify udf** <name1>..... <name8>
8. switch (config-erspan-src)# **filter** ..... *ipv6 access-group*.... <aclname>.... <allow-sharing>
9. switch(config)# **permit** ..... <regular ACE match criteria> **udf** <name1> < val > <mask> ..... <name8> < val > <mask>
10. switch(config)# **show monitor session** <session-number>

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>udf</b> < udf -name> <packet start> <offset> <length>  <b>Example:</b>  (config)# udf udf1 packet-start 10 2 (config)# udf udf2 packet-start 50 2	Defines the UDF.  <b>Note</b> You can define multiple UDFs but it is recommended to configure only the required UDFs. This configuration takes affect only after attaching the UDFs to a TCAM region and rebooting the box, as the UDFs are added to a region's qualifier set at TCAM carving time (boot up time).
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config)# <b>udf</b> < udf -name> header <Layer3/Layer4> <offset> <length>  <b>Example:</b>  (config)# <b>udf udf3 header outer 14 0 1</b> (config)# <b>udf udf3 header outer 14 10 2</b> (config)# <b>udf udf3 header outer 14 50 1</b>	Defines the UDF.
<b>Step 4</b>	switch(config)# <b>hardware profile tcam region ipv6-span-l2 512</b>  <b>Example:</b>  (config)# <b>hardware profile tcam region ipv6-span-l2 512</b> Warning: Please save config and reload the system for the configuration to take effect. config)#	Configure IPv6 on UDF on layer 2 ports. A new configuration for a region replaces the current configuration and you must reboot the switch for the configuration to come to the effect.
<b>Step 5</b>	switch(config)# <b>hardware profile tcam region ipv6-span 512</b>  <b>Example:</b>  (config)# <b>hardware profile tcam region ipv6-span 512</b> Warning: Please save config and reload the system for the configuration to take effect. config)#	Configure IPv6 on UDF on layer 3 ports. A new configuration for a region replaces the current configuration and you must reboot the switch for the configuration to come to the effect.
<b>Step 6</b>	switch(config)# <b>hardware profile tcam region span spanv6 qualify udf</b> <name1>..... <name8>  <b>Example:</b>  (config)# <b>hardware profile tcam region spanv6 qualify udf udf1</b> [SUCCESS] Changes to UDF qualifier set will be applicable only after reboot. You need to 'copy run start' and	Configure UDF Qualification in SPAN for layer 3 ports. This enables the UDF match for ipv6-span TCAM region. Add the UDFs to qualifier set for a TCAM region at TCAM carving time (happens at boot up time). The configuration allows maximum of 2 IPv6 UDFs that can be attached to a SPAN region, all UDFs listed in a single command for a region. A new configuration for a region replaces the current configuration, but note that it needs a reboot for the configuration to come to the effect.



	Command or Action	Purpose
	'reload' config)#	
<b>Step 7</b>	switch(config)# <b>hardware profile tcam region span spanv6-12 qualify udf</b> <name1>..... <name8>  <b>Example:</b>  (config)# <b>hardware profile tcam region spanv6-12 qualify udf udf1</b> [SUCCESS] Changes to UDF qualifier set will be applicable only after reboot. You need to 'copy run start' and 'reload' config)#	Configure UDF Qualification in SPAN for layer 2 ports. This enables the UDF match for ipv6-span-12 TCAM region. Add the UDFs to qualifier set for a TCAM region at TCAM carving time (happens at boot up time). The configuration allows a maximum of 2 IPv6 UDFs that can be attached to a SPAN region, all UDFs listed in a single command for a region. A new configuration for a region replaces the current configuration, but note that it needs a reboot for the configuration to come to the effect.
<b>Step 8</b>	switch (config-erspan-src)# <b>filter</b> ..... <i>ipv6 access-group</i> .... <aclname>.... <allow-sharing>  <b>Example:</b>  (config-erspan-src)# <b>ipv6 filter access-group test</b> (config)#	Configure a IPv6 ACL in SPAN and ERSPAN mode. You can have only one of “filter ip access-group” or “filter ipv6 access-group” configuration in one monitor session. If same source interface is part of a IPv4 and IPv6 ERSPAN ACL monitor session, the “allow-sharing” needs to be configured with the “filter [ipv6] access-group” in the monitor session configuration.
<b>Step 9</b>	switch(config)# <b>permit</b> ..... <regular ACE match criteria> <b>udf</b> <name1> < val > <mask> ..... <name8> < val > <mask>  <b>Example:</b>  (config-erspan-src)# <b>ipv6 access-list test</b> (config-ipv6-acl)# <b>permit ipv6 any any udf udf1 0x1 0x0</b>	Configure an ACL with UDF match.
<b>Step 10</b>	switch(config)# <b>show monitor session</b> <session-number>  <b>Example:</b>  (config)# <b>show monitor session 1</b> session 1 ----- type : erspan-source state : up vrf-name : default destination-ip : 40.1.1.1 ip-ttl : 255 ip-dscp : 0 acl-name : test origin-ip : 100.1.1.10 (global) source intf : rx : Eth1/20 tx : Eth1/20 both : Eth1/20 source VLANs : filter VLANs : filter not specified rx : source fwd drops : egress-intf : Eth1/23 switch# config)#	Displays the ACL using the <b>show monitor session &lt;session-number&gt;</b> command.

## Shutting Down or Activating an ERSPAN Session

You can shut down ERSPAN sessions to discontinue the copying of packets from sources to destinations. Because only a specific number of ERSPAN sessions can be running simultaneously, you can shut down a session to free hardware resources to enable another session. By default, ERSPAN sessions are created in the shut state.

You can enable ERSPAN sessions to activate the copying of packets from sources to destinations. To enable an ERSPAN session that is already enabled but operationally down, you must first shut it down and then enable it. You can shut down and enable the ERSPAN session states with either a global or monitor configuration mode command.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configuration terminal**
2. **monitor session** {*session-range* | **all**} **shut**
3. **no monitor session** {*session-range* | **all**} **shut**
4. **monitor session** *session-number* **type** **erspan-source**
5. **monitor session** *session-number* **type** **erspan-destination**
6. **shut**
7. **no shut**
8. (Optional) **show monitor session all**
9. (Optional) **show running-config monitor**
10. (Optional) **show startup-config monitor**
11. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configuration terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch# configuration terminal switch(config)#</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>monitor session</b> { <i>session-range</i>   <b>all</b> } <b>shut</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config)# monitor session 3 shut</pre>	Shuts down the specified ERSPAN sessions. The session range is from 1-18. By default, sessions are created in the shut state. Four unidirectional sessions or two bidirectional sessions can be active at the same time.  <b>Note</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• In Cisco Nexus 5000 and 5500 platforms, two sessions can run simultaneously.</li> <li>• In Cisco Nexus 5600 and 6000 platforms, 16 sessions can run simultaneously.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>no monitor session</b> { <i>session-range</i>   <b>all</b> } <b>shut</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config)# no monitor session 3 shut</pre>	Resumes (enables) the specified ERSPAN sessions. The session range is from 1-18. The session range is from 1-18. By default, sessions are created in the shut state. Four unidirectional sessions or two bidirectional sessions can be active at the same time.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<b>Note</b> If a monitor session is enabled but its operational status is down, then to enable the session, you must first specify the <b>monitor session shut</b> command followed by the <b>no monitor session shut</b> command.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>monitor session</b> <i>session-number</i> <b>type erspan-source</b> <b>Example:</b> switch(config)# monitor session 3 type erspan-source switch(config-erspan-src)#	Enters the monitor configuration mode for the ERSPAN source type. The new session configuration is added to the existing session configuration.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>monitor session</b> <i>session-number</i> <b>type erspan-destination</b> <b>Example:</b> switch(config-erspan-src)# monitor session 3 type erspan-destination	Enters the monitor configuration mode for the ERSPAN destination type.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>shut</b> <b>Example:</b> switch(config-erspan-src)# shut	Shuts down the ERSPAN session. By default, the session is created in the shut state.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>no shut</b> <b>Example:</b> switch(config-erspan-src)# no shut	Enables the ERSPAN session. By default, the session is created in the shut state.
<b>Step 8</b>	(Optional) <b>show monitor session all</b> <b>Example:</b> switch(config-erspan-src)# show monitor session all	Displays the status of ERSPAN sessions.
<b>Step 9</b>	(Optional) <b>show running-config monitor</b> <b>Example:</b> switch(config-erspan-src)# show running-config monitor	Displays the running ERSPAN configuration.
<b>Step 10</b>	(Optional) <b>show startup-config monitor</b> <b>Example:</b> switch(config-erspan-src)# show startup-config monitor	Displays the ERSPAN startup configuration.
<b>Step 11</b>	(Optional) <b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b> switch(config-erspan-src)# copy running-config startup-config	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

## Verifying the ERSPAN Configuration

Use the following command to verify the ERSPAN configuration information:

Command	Purpose
<b>show monitor session</b> { <b>all</b>   <i>session-number</i>   <b>range</b> <i>session-range</i> }	Displays the ERSPAN session configuration.
<b>show running-config monitor</b>	Displays the running ERSPAN configuration.
<b>show startup-config monitor</b>	Displays the ERSPAN startup configuration.

## Configuration Examples for ERSPAN

### Configuration Example for an ERSPAN Source Session

The following example shows how to configure an ERSPAN source session:

```
switch# config t
switch(config)# interface e14/30
switch(config-if)# no shut
switch(config-if)# exit
switch(config)# monitor erspan origin ip-address 3.3.3.3 global
switch(config)# monitor session 1 type erspan-source
switch(config-erspan-src)# filter access-group acl1
switch(config-erspan-src)# source interface e14/30
switch(config-erspan-src)# ip ttl 16
switch(config-erspan-src)# ip dscp 5
switch(config-erspan-src)# vrf default
switch(config-erspan-src)# destination ip 9.1.1.2
switch(config-erspan-src)# no shut
switch(config-erspan-src)# exit
switch(config)# show monitor session 1
```

### Configuration Example for an ERSPAN ACL

This example shows how to configure an ERSPAN ACL:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# ip access-list match_11_pkts
switch(config-acl)# permit ip 11.0.0.0 0.255.255.255 any
switch(config-acl)# exit
switch(config)# ip access-list match_12_pkts
switch(config-acl)# permit ip 12.0.0.0 0.255.255.255 any
switch(config-acl)# exit
switch(config)# vlan access-map erspan_filter 5
switch(config-access-map)# match ip address match_11_pkts
switch(config-access-map)# action forward
switch(config-access-map)# exit
switch(config)# vlan access-map erspan_filter 10
switch(config-access-map)# match ip address match_12_pkts
switch(config-access-map)# action forward
switch(config-access-map)# exit
```

```
switch(config)# monitor session 1 type erspan-source
switch(config-erspan-src)# filter access_group erspan_filter
```

## Configuration Examples for UDF-Based ERSPAN

This example shows how to configure UDF-based ERSPAN to match on the inner TCP flags of an encapsulated IP-in-IP packet using the following match criteria:

- Outer source IP address: 10.0.0.2
- Inner TCP flags: Urgent TCP flag is set
- Bytes: Eth Hdr (14) + Outer IP (20) + Inner IP (20) + Inner TCP (20, but TCP flags at 13th byte)
- Offset from packet-start: 14 + 20 + 20 + 13 = 67
- UDF match value: 0x20
- UDF mask: 0xFF

```
udf udf_tcpflags packet-start 67 1
hardware access-list tcam region racl qualify udf udf_tcpflags
copy running-config startup-config
reload
ip access-list acl-udf
 permit ip 10.0.0.2/32 any udf udf_tcpflags 0x20 0xff
monitor session 1 type erspan-source
 source interface Ethernet 1/1
 filter access-group acl-udf
```

This example shows how to configure UDF-based ERSPAN to match regular IP packets with a packet signature (DEADBEEF) at 6 bytes after a Layer 4 header start using the following match criteria:

- Outer source IP address: 10.0.0.2
- Inner TCP flags: Urgent TCP flag is set
- Bytes: Eth Hdr (14) + IP (20) + TCP (20) + Payload: 112233445566DEADBEEF7788
- Offset from Layer 4 header start: 20 + 6 = 26
- UDF match value: 0xDEADBEEF (split into two-byte chunks and two UDFs)
- UDF mask: 0xFFFFFFFF

```
udf udf_pktsig_msb header outer 13 26 2
udf udf_pktsig_lsb header outer 13 28 2
hardware access-list tcam region racl qualify udf udf_pktsig_msb udf_pktsig_lsb
copy running-config startup-config
reload
ip access-list acl-udf-pktsig
 permit udf udf_pktsig_msb 0xDEAD 0xFFFF udf udf_pktsig_lsb 0xBEEF 0xFFFF
monitor session 1 type erspan-source
 source interface Ethernet 1/1
 filter access-group acl-udf-pktsig
```

# Additional References

## Related Documents

Related Topic	Document Title
ERSPAN commands: complete command syntax, command modes, command history, defaults, usage guidelines, and examples	<i>Cisco Nexus NX-OS System Management Command Reference</i> for your platform.



## CHAPTER 16

# Configuring DNS

---

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [About DNS Client](#) , on page 183
- [Prerequisites for DNS Clients](#), on page 184
- [Default Settings for DNS Clients](#), on page 184
- [Configuring the DNS Source Interface](#), on page 184
- [Configuring DNS Clients](#), on page 185

## About DNS Client

If your network devices require connectivity with devices in networks for which you do not control name assignment, you can assign device names that uniquely identify your devices within the entire internetwork using the domain name server (DNS). DNS uses a hierarchical scheme for establishing hostnames for network nodes, which allows local control of the segments of the network through a client-server scheme. The DNS system can locate a network device by translating the hostname of the device into its associated IP address.

On the Internet, a domain is a portion of the naming hierarchy tree that refers to general groupings of networks based on the organization type or geography. Domain names are pieced together with periods (.) as the delimiting characters. For example, Cisco is a commercial organization that the Internet identifies by a com domain, so its domain name is cisco.com. A specific hostname in this domain, the File Transfer Protocol (FTP) system, for example, is identified as ftp.cisco.com.

## Name Servers

Name servers keep track of domain names and know the parts of the domain tree for which they have complete information. A name server may also store information about other parts of the domain tree. To map domain names to IP addresses in Cisco NX-OS, you must first identify the hostnames, then specify a name server, and enable the DNS service.

Cisco NX-OS allows you to statically map IP addresses to domain names. You can also configure Cisco NX-OS to use one or more domain name servers to find an IP address for a hostname.

## DNS Operation

A name server handles client-issued queries to the DNS server for locally defined hosts within a particular zone as follows:

- An authoritative name server responds to DNS user queries for a domain name that is under its zone of authority by using the permanent and cached entries in its own host table. If the query is for a domain name that is under its zone of authority but for which it does not have any configuration information, the authoritative name server replies that no such information exists.
- A name server that is not configured as the authoritative name server responds to DNS user queries by using information that it has cached from previously received query responses. If no router is configured as the authoritative name server for a zone, queries to the DNS server for locally defined hosts receive nonauthoritative responses.

Name servers answer DNS queries (forward incoming DNS queries or resolve internally generated DNS queries) according to the forwarding and lookup parameters configured for the specific domain.

## High Availability

Cisco Nexus 3600 platform switches supports stateless restarts for the DNS client. After a reboot or supervisor switchover, Cisco NX-OS applies the running configuration.

## Prerequisites for DNS Clients

The DNS client has the following prerequisites:

- You must have a DNS name server on your network.

## Default Settings for DNS Clients

The following table shows the default settings for DNS client parameters.

Parameter	Default
DNS client	Enabled

## Configuring the DNS Source Interface

You can configure DNS to use a specific interface.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **ip dns source-interface** *type slot/port*
3. switch(config)# **show ip dns source-interface**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.



	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	switch(config)# <b>ip dns source-interface</b> <i>type slot/port</i>	<p>Configures the source interface for all DNS packets. The following list contains the valid values for <i>interface</i>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ethernet</li> <li>• loopback</li> <li>• mgmt</li> <li>• port-channel</li> <li>• vlan</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> When you, configure the source interface for DNS, SCP copy operations initiated from the server fail. To perform an SCP copy operation from the server, remove the DNS source interface configuration.</p>
Step 3	switch(config)# <b>show ip dns source-interface</b>	Displays the configured DNS source interface.

### Example

This example shows how to configure the DNS source interface:

```
switch(config)# configure terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
switch(config)# ip dns source-interface ethernet 1/8
switch(config)# show ip dns source-interface
VRF Name                               Interface
default                                 Ethernet1/8
```

## Configuring DNS Clients

You can configure the DNS client to use a DNS server on your network.

### Before you begin

- Ensure that you have a domain name server on your network.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configuration terminal**
2. switch(config)# **vrf context management**
3. switch(config)# **{ip | ipv6} host name ip/ipv6 address1 [ip/ipv6 address2... ip/ipv6 address6]**
4. (Optional) switch(config)# **ip domain name name [use-vrf vrf-name]**
5. (Optional) switch(config)# **ip domain-list name [use-vrf vrf-name]**
6. (Optional) switch(config)# **ip name-server ip/ipv6 server-address1 [ip/ipv6 server-address2... ip/ipv6 server-address6] [use-vrf vrf-name]**

7. (Optional) switch(config)# **ip domain-lookup**
8. (Optional) switch(config)# **show hosts**
9. switch(config)# **exit**
10. (Optional) switch# **copy running-config startup-config**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configuration terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# vrf context management	Specifies a configurable virtual and routing (VRF) name.
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config)# { <b>ip</b>   <b>ipv6</b> } <b>host name</b> <i>ip/ipv6 address1</i> [ <i>ip/ipv6 address2... ip/ipv6 address6</i> ]	Defines up to six static hostname-to-address mappings in the host name cache.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>ip domain name</b> <i>name</i> [ <b>use-vrf</b> <i>vrf-name</i> ]	Defines the default domain name server that Cisco NX-OS uses to complete unqualified hostnames. You can optionally define a VRF that Cisco NX-OS uses to resolve this domain name server if it cannot be resolved in the VRF that you configured this domain name under.  Cisco NX-OS appends the default domain name to any host name that does not contain a complete domain name before starting a domain-name lookup.
<b>Step 5</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>ip domain-list</b> <i>name</i> [ <b>use-vrf</b> <i>vrf-name</i> ]	Defines additional domain name servers that Cisco NX-OS can use to complete unqualified hostnames. You can optionally define a VRF that Cisco NX-OS uses to resolve this domain name server if it cannot be resolved in the VRF that you configured this domain name under.  Cisco NX-OS uses each entry in the domain list to append that domain name to any hostname that does not contain a complete domain name before starting a domain-name lookup. Cisco NX-OS continues this for each entry in the domain list until it finds a match.
<b>Step 6</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>ip name-server</b> <i>ip/ipv6 server-address1</i> [ <i>ip/ipv6 server-address2... ip/ipv6 server-address6</i> ] [ <b>use-vrf</b> <i>vrf-name</i> ]	Defines up to six name servers. The address can be either an IPv4 address or an IPv6 address.  You can optionally define a VRF that Cisco NX-OS uses to reach this name server if it cannot be reached in the VRF that you configured this name server under.
<b>Step 7</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>ip domain-lookup</b>	Enables DNS-based address translation. This feature is enabled by default.
<b>Step 8</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>show hosts</b>	Displays information about DNS.
<b>Step 9</b>	switch(config)# <b>exit</b>	Exits configuration mode and returns to EXEC mode.
<b>Step 10</b>	(Optional) switch# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

The following example shows how to configure a default domain name and enable DNS lookup:

```
switch# config t
switch(config)# vrf context management
switch(config)# ip domain-name mycompany.com
switch(config)# ip name-server 172.68.0.10
switch(config)# ip domain-lookup
```





## CHAPTER 17

# Configuring sFlow

---

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [About sFlow, on page 189](#)
- [Prerequisites, on page 190](#)
- [Guidelines and Limitations for sFlow, on page 190](#)
- [Default Settings for sFlow, on page 190](#)
- [Minimum Requirements for Sampling, on page 190](#)
- [Configuring sFlow, on page 191](#)
- [Verifying the sFlow Configuration, on page 198](#)
- [Configuration Examples for sFlow, on page 198](#)
- [Additional References for sFlow, on page 199](#)

## About sFlow

sFlow allows you to monitor the real-time traffic in data networks that contain switches and routers. It uses the sampling mechanism in the sFlow Agent software on switches and routers for monitoring traffic and to forward the sample data on ingress and egress ports to the central data collector, also called the sFlow Analyzer.

For more information about sFlow, see RFC 3176.

## sFlow Agent

The sFlow Agent, which is embedded in the Cisco NX-OS software, periodically samples or polls the interface counters that are associated with a data source of the sampled packets. The data source can be an Ethernet interface, an EtherChannel interface, or a range of either. Ethernet or port-channel sub-interfaces are not supported. The sFlow Agent queries the Ethernet port manager for the respective EtherChannel membership information and also receives notifications from the Ethernet port manager for membership changes.

When you enable sFlow sampling in the Cisco NX-OS software, based on the sampling rate and the hardware internal random number, the ingress packets and egress packets are sent to the CPU as an sFlow-sampled packet. The sFlow Agent processes the sampled packets and sends an sFlow datagram to the sFlow Analyzer. In addition to the original sampled packet, an sFlow datagram includes the information about the ingress port, egress port, and the original packet length. An sFlow datagram can have multiple sFlow samples.

## Prerequisites

You must enable the sFlow feature using the **feature sflow** command to configure sFlow.

## Guidelines and Limitations for sFlow

The sFlow configuration guidelines and limitations are as follows:

- When you enable sFlow for an interface, it is enabled for both ingress and egress. You cannot enable sFlow for only ingress or only egress.
- sFlow egress sampling for multicast, broadcast, or unknown unicast packets is not supported.
- You should configure the sampling rate based on the sFlow configuration and traffic in the system.
- Cisco Nexus 3600 platform switches supports only one sFlow collector.
- Ethernet or port-channel sub-interfaces are not supported as sFlow data-source ports.
- You cannot configure individual port-channel member ports as sFlow data-sources. The port-channel bundle interface can be sFlow enabled data-source ports, such as sFlow data-source interface po1.

## Default Settings for sFlow

*Table 16: Default sFlow Parameters*

Parameters	Default
sFlow sampling-rate	4096
sFlow sampling-size	128
sFlow max datagram-size	1400
sFlow collector-port	6343
sFlow counter-poll-interval	20

## Minimum Requirements for Sampling

Without these configured, no packets will be sampled: After you enable the sFlow feature, you must explicitly configure the following configuration elements for the packet sampling to take effect on the device.

- Sflow Agent-IP
- Sflow Collector-IP
- Sflow Data-source interface

If you do not configure the configuration elements, packets will not be sampled.

The default configuration elements specified as the default settings for sFlow are optional.

# Configuring sFlow

## Enabling the sFlow Feature

You must enable the sFlow feature before you can configure sFlow on the switch.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. [no] **feature sflow**
3. (Optional) **show feature**
4. (Optional) switch(config)# **copy running-config startup-config**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	[no] <b>feature sflow</b>	Enables the sFlow feature.
Step 3	(Optional) <b>show feature</b>	Displays enabled and disabled features.
Step 4	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

The following example shows how to enable the sFlow feature:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# feature sflow
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
```

## Configuring the Sampling Rate

### Before you begin

Ensure that you have enabled the sFlow feature.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. [no] **sflow sampling-rate *sampling-rate***
3. (Optional) **show sflow**

#### 4. (Optional) switch(config)# **copy running-config startup-config**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	[no] <b>sflow sampling-rate</b> <i>sampling-rate</i>	Configures the sFlow sampling rate for packets.  The <i>sampling-rate</i> can be an integer between 4096-1000000000. The default value is 4096.
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) <b>show sflow</b>	Displays sFlow information.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

This example shows how to set the sampling rate to 50,000:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# sflow sampling-rate 50000
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
```

With the above configuration, approximately 1 out of every 50,000 packets will be sampled and sent to the sFlow collector. Note that there could be a slight variance.

## Configuring the Maximum Sampled Size

You can configure the maximum number of bytes that should be copied from a sampled packet.

### Before you begin

Ensure that you have enabled the sFlow feature.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. [no] **sflow max-sampled-size** *sampling-size*
3. (Optional) **show sflow**
4. (Optional) switch(config)# **copy running-config startup-config**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	[no] <b>sflow max-sampled-size</b> <i>sampling-size</i>	Configures the sFlow maximum sampling size packets.



	Command or Action	Purpose
		The range for the <i>sampling-size</i> is from 64 to 256 bytes. The default value is 128.
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) <b>show sflow</b>	Displays configured sFlow values.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

This example shows how to configure the maximum sampling size for the sFlow Agent:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# sflow max-sampled-size 200
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
```

## Configuring the Counter Poll Interval

You can configure the maximum number of seconds between successive samples of the counters that are associated with the data source. A sampling interval of 0 disables counter sampling.

### Before you begin

Ensure that you have enabled the sFlow feature.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. [no] **sflow counter-poll-interval** *poll-interval*
3. (Optional) **show sflow**
4. (Optional) switch(config)# **copy running-config startup-config**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	[no] <b>sflow counter-poll-interval</b> <i>poll-interval</i>	Configures the sFlow poll interval for an interface. The range for the <i>poll-interval</i> is from 0 to 2147483647 seconds. The default value is 20. Configuring 0 disables the counter polling.
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) <b>show sflow</b>	Displays sFlow information.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

**Example**

This example shows how to configure the sFlow poll interval for an interface:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# sflow counter-poll-interval 100
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
```

## Configuring the Maximum Datagram Size

You can configure the maximum number of data bytes that can be sent in a single sample datagram.

**Before you begin**

Ensure that you have enabled the sFlow feature.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. [no] **sflow max-datagram-size** *datagram-size*
3. (Optional) **show sflow**
4. (Optional) switch(config)# **copy running-config startup-config**

**DETAILED STEPS**

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	[no] <b>sflow max-datagram-size</b> <i>datagram-size</i>	Configures the sFlow maximum datagram size.  The range for the <i>datagram-size</i> is from 200 to 9000 bytes. The default value is 1400.
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) <b>show sflow</b>	Displays configured sFlow values.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

**Example**

This example shows how to configure the sFlow maximum datagram size:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# sflow max-datagram-size 2000
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
[#####] 100%
```

## Configuring the sFlow Analyzer Address

### Before you begin

Ensure that you have enabled the sFlow feature.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. [no] **sflow collector-ip vrf** *IP-address vrf-instance*
3. (Optional) **show sflow**
4. (Optional) switch(config)# **copy running-config startup-config**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	[no] <b>sflow collector-ip vrf</b> <i>IP-address vrf-instance</i>	Configures the IPv4 address for the sFlow Analyzer. <i>vrf-instance</i> can be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A user-defined VRF name—You can specify a maximum of 32 alphanumeric characters.</li> <li>• <b>vrf management</b>— You must use this option if the sFlow data collector is on the network connected to the management port.</li> <li>• <b>vrf default</b>—You must use this option if the sFlow data collector is connected to a network reachable via any front panel port residing on the default vrf.</li> </ul>
Step 3	(Optional) <b>show sflow</b>	Purpose "Displays configured sFlow values.
Step 4	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

This example shows how to configure the IPv4 address of the sFlow data collector that is connected to the management port:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# sflow collector-ip 192.0.2.5 vrf management
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
```

## Configuring the sFlow Analyzer Port

You can configure the destination port for sFlow datagrams.

**Before you begin**

Ensure that you have enabled the sFlow feature.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. [no] **sflow collector-port** *collector-port*
3. (Optional) **show sflow**
4. (Optional) switch(config)# **copy running-config startup-config**

**DETAILED STEPS**

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	[no] <b>sflow collector-port</b> <i>collector-port</i>	Configures the UDP port of the sFlow Analyzer. The range for the <i>collector-port</i> is from 0 to 65535. The default value is 6343.
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) <b>show sflow</b>	Displays configured sFlow values.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

**Example**

This example shows how to configure the destination port for sFlow datagrams:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# sflow collector-port 7000
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
[#####] 100%
switch(config)#
```

## Configuring the sFlow Agent Address

**Before you begin**

Ensure that you have enabled the sFlow feature.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. [no] **sflow agent-ip** *ip-address*
3. (Optional) **show sflow**
4. (Optional) switch(config)# **copy running-config startup-config**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	[no] <b>sflow agent-ip ip-address</b>	Configures the IPv4 address of the sFlow Agent.  The default <i>ip-address</i> is 0.0.0.0, which means that all sampling is disabled on the switch. You must specify a valid IP address to enable sFlow functionality. The configured value can be an IP address present on the local system or any other arbitrary IP value desired for a tracking purpose.
Step 3	(Optional) <b>show sflow</b>	Displays sFlow information.
Step 4	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

## Example

This example shows how to configure the IPv4 address of the sFlow Agent:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# sflow agent-ip 192.0.2.3
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
```

## Configuring the sFlow Sampling Data Source

The sFlow sampling data source can be an Ethernet port, a range of Ethernet ports, or a port channel.

## Before you begin

- Ensure that you have enabled the sFlow feature.
- If you want to use a port channel as the data source, ensure that you have already configured the port channel and you know the port channel number.

## SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# [no] **sflow data-source interface [ethernet slot/port[-port] | port-channel channel-number]**
3. (Optional) switch(config)# **show sflow**
4. (Optional) switch(config)# **copy running-config startup-config**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>[no] sflow data-source interface</b> [ethernet <i>slot/port[-port]</i>  port-channel <i>channel-number</i> ]	Configures the sFlow sampling data source.  For an Ethernet data source, <i>slot</i> is the slot number and <i>port</i> can be either a single port number or a range of ports designated as <i>port-port</i> .
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>show sflow</b>	Displays configured sFlow values.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

This example shows how to configure Ethernet ports 5 through 12 for the sFlow sampler:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# sflow data-source interface ethernet 1/5-12
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
[#####] 100%
switch(config)#
```

This example shows how to configure port channel 100 for the sFlow sampler:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# sflow data-source interface port-channel 100
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
[#####] 100%
switch(config)#
```

## Verifying the sFlow Configuration

Use the following commands to verify the sFlow configuration information:

Command	Purpose
<b>show sflow</b>	Displays the sFlow global configuration.
<b>show sflow statistics</b>	Displays the sFlow statistics.
<b>clear sflow statistics</b>	Clears the sFlow statistics.
<b>show running-config sflow [all]</b>	Displays the current running sFlow configuration.

## Configuration Examples for sFlow

This example shows how to configure sFlow:

```
feature sflow
sflow sampling-rate 5000
```

```
sflow max-sampled-size 200
sflow counter-poll-interval 100
sflow max-datagram-size 2000
sflow collector-ip 192.0.2.5 vrf management
sflow collector-port 7000
sflow agent-ip 192.0.2.3
sflow data-source interface ethernet 1/5
```

## Additional References for sFlow

*Table 17: Related Documents for sFlow*

Related Topic	Document Title
sFlow CLI commands	<i>Cisco Nexus 3600 NX-OS Command Reference.</i>
RFC 3176	Defines the sFlow packet format and SNMP MIB. <a href="http://www.sflow.org/rfc3176.txt">http://www.sflow.org/rfc3176.txt</a>







## CHAPTER 18

# Configuring Graceful Insertion and Removal

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [About Graceful Insertion and Removal, on page 201](#)
- [GIR Workflow, on page 203](#)
- [Configuring the Maintenance-Mode Profile, on page 204](#)
- [Configuring the Normal-Mode Profile, on page 205](#)
- [Creating a Snapshot, on page 206](#)
- [Adding Show Commands to Snapshots, on page 208](#)
- [Triggering Graceful Removal, on page 209](#)
- [Triggering Graceful Insertion, on page 212](#)
- [Maintenance Mode Enhancements, on page 213](#)
- [Verifying the GIR Configuration, on page 214](#)

## About Graceful Insertion and Removal

You can use graceful insertion and removal to gracefully eject a switch and isolate it from the network in order to perform debugging or upgrade operations. The switch is removed from the regular forwarding path with minimal traffic disruption. When you are finished performing debugging or upgrade operations, you can use graceful insertion to return the switch to its fully operational (normal) mode.

In graceful removal, all protocols and vPC domains are gracefully brought down and the switch is isolated from the network. In graceful insertion, all protocols and vPC domains are restored.

The following protocols are supported (for both IPv4 and IPv6 address families):

- Border Gateway Protocol (BGP)
- Enhanced Interior Gateway Routing Protocol (EIGRP)
- Intermediate System-to-Intermediate System (ISIS)
- Open Shortest Path First (OSPF)
- Protocol Independent Multicast (PIM)
- Routing Information Protocol (RIP)



**Note** For graceful insertion and removal, the PIM protocol is applicable only to vPC environments. During graceful removal, the vPC forwarding role is transferred to the vPC peer for all northbound sources of multicast traffic.

## Profiles

By default, the system isolates all enabled protocols during graceful removal and restores them during graceful insertion. The protocols are isolated and restored in a predefined order.

If you want to isolate, shut down, or restore the protocols individually (or perform additional configurations), you can create a profile with configuration commands that can be applied during graceful removal or graceful insertion. However, you need to make sure that the order of the protocols is correct and any dependencies are considered.

The switch supports the following profiles:

- Maintenance-mode profile—Contains all the commands that will be executed during graceful removal, when the switch enters maintenance mode.
- Normal-mode profile—Contains all the commands that will be executed during graceful insertion, when the switch returns to normal mode.

The following commands (along with any configuration commands) are supported in the profiles:

Command	Description
<b>isolate</b>	Isolates the protocol from the switch and puts the protocol in maintenance mode.
<b>no isolate</b>	Restores the protocol and puts the protocol in normal mode.
<b>shutdown</b>	Shuts down the protocol or vPC domain.
<b>no shutdown</b>	Brings up the protocol or vPC domain.
<b>system interface shutdown [exclude fex-fabric]</b>	Shuts down the system interfaces (except the management interface).
<b>no system interface shutdown [exclude fex-fabric]</b>	Brings up the system interfaces.
<b>sleep instance</b> <i>instance-number seconds</i>	Delays the execution of the command by a specified number of seconds. You can delay multiple instances of the command.  The range for the <i>instance-number</i> and <i>seconds</i> arguments is from 0 to 2177483647.

Command	Description
<b>python instance</b> <i>instance-number uri</i> [ <i>python-arguments</i> ] Example: <b>python instance 1 bootflash://script1.py</b>	Configures Python script invocations to the profile. You can add multiple invocations of the command to the profile.  You can enter a maximum of 32 alphanumeric characters for the Python arguments.

## Snapshots

In Cisco NX-OS, a snapshot is the process of capturing the running states of selected features and storing them on persistent storage media.

Snapshots are useful to compare the state of a switch before graceful removal and after graceful insertion. The snapshot process consists of three parts:

- Creating a snapshot of the states of a few preselected features on the switch and storing them on the persistent storage media
- Listing the snapshots taken at various time intervals and managing them
- Comparing snapshots and showing the differences between features

## GIR Workflow

Follow these steps to complete the graceful insertion and removal (GIR) workflow:

1. (Optional) Create the maintenance-mode profile. (See [Configuring the Maintenance-Mode Profile, on page 204.](#))
2. (Optional) Create the normal-mode profile. (See [Configuring the Normal-Mode Profile, on page 205.](#))
3. Take a snapshot before triggering graceful removal. (See [Creating a Snapshot, on page 206.](#))
4. Trigger graceful removal to put the switch in maintenance mode. (See [Triggering Graceful Removal, on page 209.](#))
5. Trigger graceful insertion to return the switch to normal mode. (See [Triggering Graceful Insertion, on page 212.](#))
6. Take a snapshot after triggering graceful insertion. (See [Creating a Snapshot, on page 206.](#))
7. Use the **show snapshots compare** command to compare the operational data before and after the graceful removal and insertion of the switch to make sure that everything is running as expected. (See [Verifying the GIR Configuration, on page 214.](#))

# Configuring the Maintenance-Mode Profile

You can create a maintenance-mode profile with configuration commands that can be applied during graceful removal or graceful insertion.

## SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure maintenance profile maintenance-mode**
2. **end**
3. **show maintenance profile maintenance-mode**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	<b>configure maintenance profile maintenance-mode</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch# configure maintenance profile maintenance-mode Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z. switch(config-mm-profile)#</pre>	Enters a configuration session for the maintenance-mode profile.  Depending on which protocols you have configured, you must now enter the appropriate commands to bring down the protocols. For a list of supported commands, see <a href="#">Profiles, on page 202</a> .
Step 2	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-mm-profile)# end switch#</pre>	Closes the maintenance-mode profile.
Step 3	<b>show maintenance profile maintenance-mode</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch# show maintenance profile maintenance-mode</pre>	Displays the details of the maintenance-mode profile.

## Example

This example shows how to create a maintenance-mode profile:

```
switch# configure maintenance profile maintenance-mode
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
switch(config-mm-profile)# ip pim isolate
switch(config-mm-profile)# vpc domain 10
switch(config-mm-profile-config-vpc-domain)# shutdown
switch(config-mm-profile)# router bgp 100
switch(config-mm-profile-router)# shutdown
switch(config-mm-profile)# router eigrp 10
switch(config-mm-profile-router)# shutdown
switch(config-mm-profile-router)# address-family ipv6 unicast
switch(config-mm-profile-router-af)# shutdown
switch(config-mm-profile)# system interface shutdown
switch(config-mm-profile)# end
Exit maintenance profile mode.
switch# show maintenance profile maintenance-mode
[Maintenance Mode]
```

```

ip pim isolate
vpc domain 10
  shutdown
router bgp 100
  shutdown
router eigrp 10
  shutdown
  address-family ipv6 unicast
  shutdown
system interface shutdown

```

## Configuring the Normal-Mode Profile

You can create a normal-mode profile with configuration commands that can be applied during graceful removal or graceful insertion.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure maintenance profile normal-mode**
2. **end**
3. **show maintenance profile normal-mode**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	<b>configure maintenance profile normal-mode</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch# configure maintenance profile normal-mode Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z. switch(config-mm-profile)#</pre>	Enters a configuration session for the normal-mode profile. Depending on which protocols you have configured, you must now enter the appropriate commands to bring up the protocols. For a list of supported commands, see <a href="#">Profiles, on page 202</a> .
Step 2	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-mm-profile)# end switch#</pre>	Closes the normal-mode profile.
Step 3	<b>show maintenance profile normal-mode</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch# show maintenance profile normal-mode</pre>	Displays the details of the normal-mode profile.

### Example

This example shows how to create a maintenance-mode profile:

```

switch# configure maintenance profile normal-mode
switch(config-mm-profile)# no system interface shutdown
switch(config-mm-profile)# router eigrp 10
switch(config-mm-profile-router)# no shutdown

```

```

switch(config-mm-profile-router)# address-family ipv6 unicast
switch(config-mm-profile-router-af)# no shutdown
switch(config-mm-profile)# router bgp 100
switch(config-mm-profile-router)# no shutdown
switch(config-mm-profile)# vpc domain 10
switch(config-mm-profile-config-vpc-domain)# no shutdown
switch(config-mm-profile)# no ip pim isolate
switch(config-mm-profile)# end
Exit maintenance profile mode.
switch# show maintenance profile normal-mode
[Normal Mode]
no system interface shutdown
router eigrp 10
  no shutdown
  address-family ipv6 unicast
  no shutdown
router bgp 100
  no shutdown
vpc domain 10
  no shutdown
no ip pim isolate

```

## Creating a Snapshot

You can create a snapshot of the running states of selected features. When you create a snapshot, a predefined set of **show** commands are run and the outputs are saved.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **snapshot create** *snapshot-name description*
2. **show snapshots**
3. **show snapshots compare** *snapshot-name-1 snapshot-name-2* [**summary** | **ipv4routes** | **ipv6routes**]

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	<p><b>snapshot create</b> <i>snapshot-name description</i></p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre> switch# snapshot create snap_before_maintenance Taken before maintenance Executing 'show interface'... Done Executing 'show ip route summary vrf all'... Done Executing 'show ipv6 route summary vrf all'... Done Executing 'show bgp sessions vrf all'... Done Executing 'show ip eigrp topology summary'... Done Executing 'show ipv6 eigrp topology summary'... Done Feature 'vpc' not enabled, skipping... Executing 'show ip ospf vrf all'... Done Feature 'ospfv3' not enabled, skipping... Feature 'isis' not enabled, skipping... Feature 'rip' not enabled, skipping... Snapshot 'snap_before_maintenance' created </pre>	<p>Captures the running state or operational data of selected features and stores the data on persistent storage media.</p> <p>You can enter a maximum of 64 alphanumeric characters for the snapshot name and a maximum of 254 alphanumeric characters for the description.</p> <p>Use the <b>snapshot delete</b> <b>{all   <i>snapshot-name</i>}</b> command to delete all snapshots or a specific snapshot.</p>

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 2</b>	<p><b>show snapshots</b></p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>switch# show snapshots Snapshot Name          Time Description ----- snap_before_maintenance  Wed Aug 19 13:53:28 2015 Taken before maintenance</pre>	Displays snapshots present on the switch.
<b>Step 3</b>	<p><b>show snapshots compare snapshot-name-1 snapshot-name-2 [summary   ipv4routes   ipv6routes]</b></p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>switch# show snapshots compare snap_before_maintenance snap_after_maintenance</pre>	<p>Displays a comparison of two snapshots.</p> <p>The <b>summary</b> option displays just enough information to see the overall changes between the two snapshots.</p> <p>The <b>ipv4routes</b> and <b>ipv6routes</b> options display the changes in IPv4 and IPv6 routes between the two snapshots.</p>

**Example**

The following example shows a summary of the changes between two snapshots:

```
switch# show snapshots compare snapshot1 snapshot2 summary
feature                               snapshot1  snapshot2  changed
basic summary
  # of interfaces                      16         12         *
  # of vlans                           10         4          *
  # of ipv4 routes                      33         3          *
.....

interfaces
  # of eth interfaces                   3          0          *
  # of eth interfaces up                 2          0          *
  # of eth interfaces down               1          0          *
  # of eth interfaces other              0          0

  # of vlan interfaces                   3          1          *
  # of vlan interfaces up                 3          1          *
  # of vlan interfaces down              0          0
  # of vlan interfaces other             0          1          *
.....
```

The following example shows the changes in IPv4 routes between two snapshots:

```
switch# show snapshots compare snapshot1 snapshot2 ipv4routes
metric                               snapshot1  snapshot2  changed
# of routes                          33         3          *
# of adjacencies                      10         4          *

Prefix                               Changed Attribute
-----
23.0.0.0/8                           not in snapshot2
10.10.10.1/32                         not in snapshot2
21.1.2.3/8                            adjacency index has changed from 29 (snapshot1) to 38 (snapshot2)
.....
```

There were 28 attribute changes detected

# Adding Show Commands to Snapshots

You can specify additional **show** commands to be captured in snapshots. These **show** commands are defined in user-specified snapshot sections.

## SUMMARY STEPS

1. **snapshot section add** *section "show-command" row-id element-key1 [element-key2]*
2. **show snapshots sections**
3. **show snapshots compare** *snapshot-name-1 snapshot-name-2 [summary | ipv4routes | ipv6routes]*

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>snapshot section add</b> <i>section "show-command" row-id element-key1 [element-key2]</i>  <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch# snapshot section add myshow "show ip interface brief" ROW_intf intf-name</pre>	<p>Adds a user-specified section to snapshots. The <i>section</i> is used to name the <b>show</b> command output. You can use any word to name the section.</p> <p>The <b>show</b> command must be enclosed in quotation marks. Non-<b>show</b> commands will not be accepted.</p> <p>The <i>row-id</i> argument specifies the tag of each row entry of the <b>show</b> command's XML output. The <i>element-key1</i> and <i>element-key2</i> arguments specify the tags used to distinguish among row entries. In most cases, only the <i>element-key1</i> argument needs to be specified to be able to distinguish among row entries.</p> <p><b>Note</b> To delete a user-specified section from snapshots, use the <b>snapshot section delete</b> <i>section</i> command.</p>
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>show snapshots sections</b>  <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch# show snapshots sections</pre>	Displays the user-specified snapshot sections.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>show snapshots compare</b> <i>snapshot-name-1 snapshot-name-2 [summary   ipv4routes   ipv6routes]</i>  <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch# show snapshots compare snap1 snap2</pre>	<p>Displays a comparison of two snapshots.</p> <p>The <b>summary</b> option displays just enough information to see the overall changes between the two snapshots.</p> <p>The <b>ipv4routes</b> and <b>ipv6routes</b> options display the changes in IPv4 and IPv6 routes between the two snapshots.</p>

### Example

The following example adds the **show ip interface brief** command to the myshow snapshot section. It also compares two snapshots (snap1 and snap2) and shows the user-specified sections in both snapshots.



```

switch# snapshot section add myshow "show ip interface brief" ROW_intf intf-name
switch# show snapshots sections
user-specified snapshot sections
-----
[myshow]
  cmd: show ip interface brief
  row: ROW_intf
  key1: intf-name
  key2: -

[sect2]
  cmd: show ip ospf vrf all
  row: ROW_ctx
  key1: instance_number
  key2: cname

switch# show snapshots compare snap1 snap2
=====
Feature                Tag                snap1                snap2
=====

[bgp]
-----

[interface]
-----

      [interface:mgmt0]
            vdc_lvl_in_pkts          692310                **692317**
            vdc_lvl_in_mcast        575281                **575287**
            vdc_lvl_in_bcast         77209                 **77210**
            vdc_lvl_in_bytes         63293252              **63293714**
            vdc_lvl_out_pkts         41197                 **41198**
            vdc_lvl_out_ucast        33966                 **33967**
            vdc_lvl_out_bytes        6419714               **6419788**
-----

[ospf]
-----

[myshow]
-----

      [interface:Ethernet1/1]
            state                    up                    **down**
            admin_state              up                    **down**
-----

```

## Triggering Graceful Removal

In order to perform debugging or upgrade operations, you can trigger a graceful removal of the switch, which will eject the switch and isolate it from the network.

**Before you begin**

If you want the system to use a maintenance-mode profile that you create, see [Configuring the Maintenance-Mode Profile, on page 204](#).

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. **configure terminal**
2. **system mode maintenance** [**dont-generate-profile** | **timeout** *value* | **shutdown** | **on-reload reset-reason** *reason*]
3. (Optional) **show system mode**
4. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

**DETAILED STEPS**

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch# configure terminal switch(config)#</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>system mode maintenance</b> [ <b>dont-generate-profile</b>   <b>timeout</b> <i>value</i>   <b>shutdown</b>   <b>on-reload reset-reason</b> <i>reason</i> ] <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config)# system mode maintenance Following configuration will be applied:   ip pim isolate  router bgp 65502    isolate  router ospf p1    isolate  router ospfv3 p1    isolate  Do you want to continue (y/n)? [no] <b>y</b>  Generating a snapshot before going into maintenance mode  Starting to apply commands...  Applying : ip pim isolate Applying : router bgp 65502 Applying :   isolate Applying : router ospf p1 Applying :   isolate Applying : router ospfv3 p1 Applying :   isolate  Maintenance mode operation successful.</pre>	Puts all enabled protocols in maintenance mode (using the <b>isolate</b> command).  The following options are available: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>dont-generate-profile</b>—Prevents the dynamic searching of enabled protocols and executes commands configured in a maintenance-mode profile. Use this option if you want the system to use a maintenance-mode profile that you have created.</li> <li>• <b>timeout</b> <i>value</i>—Keeps the switch in maintenance mode for a specified number of minutes. The range is from 5 to 65535. Once the configured time elapses, the switch returns to normal mode automatically. The <b>no system mode maintenance timeout</b> command disables the timer.</li> <li>• <b>shutdown</b>—Shuts down all protocols, vPC domains, and interfaces except the management interface (using the <b>shutdown</b> command). This option is disruptive while the default (which uses the <b>isolate</b> command) is not.</li> <li>• <b>on-reload reset-reason</b> <i>reason</i>—Boots the switch into maintenance mode automatically in the event of a specified system crash. The <b>no system mode maintenance on-reload reset-reason</b> command prevents the switch from being brought up in maintenance mode in the event of a system crash.</li> </ul> The maintenance mode reset reasons are as follows:

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• HW_ERROR—Hardware error</li> <li>• SVC_FAILURE—Critical service failure</li> <li>• KERN_FAILURE—Kernel panic</li> <li>• WDOG_TIMEOUT—Watchdog timeout</li> <li>• FATAL_ERROR—Fatal error</li> <li>• LC_FAILURE—Line card failure</li> <li>• MATCH_ANY—Any of the above reasons</li> </ul> <p>The system prompts you to continue. Enter <b>y</b> to continue or <b>n</b> to terminate the process.</p>
<b>Step 3</b>	<p>(Optional) <b>show system mode</b></p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>switch(config)# show system mode System Mode: Maintenance</pre>	<p>Displays the current system mode.</p> <p>The switch is in maintenance mode. You can now perform any desired debugging or upgrade operations on the switch.</p>
<b>Step 4</b>	<p>(Optional) <b>copy running-config startup-config</b></p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config</pre>	<p>Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration. This command is required if you want to preserve maintenance mode following a reboot.</p>

**Example**

This example shows how to shut down all protocols, vPC domains, and interfaces on the switch:

```
switch(config)# system mode maintenance shutdown
```

Following configuration will be applied:

```
vpc domain 10
 shutdown
router bgp 65502
 shutdown
router ospf p1
 shutdown
router ospfv3 p1
 shutdown
system interface shutdown
```

Do you want to continue (y/n)? [no] **y**

Generating a snapshot before going into maintenance mode

Starting to apply commands...

```
Applying : vpc domain 10
Applying : shutdown
Applying : router bgp 65502
Applying : shutdown
Applying : router ospf p1
```

```
Applying : shutdown
Applying : router ospfv3 p1
Applying : shutdown

Maintenance mode operation successful.
```

This example shows how to automatically boot the switch into maintenance mode if a fatal error occurs:

```
switch(config)# system mode maintenance on-reload reset-reason fatal_error
```

## Triggering Graceful Insertion

When you finish performing any debugging or upgrade operations, you can trigger a graceful insertion to restore all protocols.

### Before you begin

If you want the system to use a normal-mode profile that you create, see [Configuring the Maintenance-Mode Profile, on page 204](#).

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **no system mode maintenance [dont-generate-profile]**
3. (Optional) **show system mode**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch# configure terminal switch(config)#</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>no system mode maintenance [dont-generate-profile]</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config)# no system mode maintenance dont-generate-profile Following configuration will be applied:  no ip pim isolate router bgp 65502   no isolate router ospf p1   no isolate router ospfv3 p1   no isolate  Do you want to continue (y/n)? [no] <b>y</b></pre>	Puts all enabled protocols in normal mode (using the <b>no isolate</b> command).  The <b>dont-generate-profile</b> option prevents the dynamic searching of enabled protocols and executes commands configured in a normal-mode profile. Use this option if you want the system to use a normal-mode profile that you have created.  The system prompts you to continue. Enter <b>y</b> to continue or <b>n</b> to terminate the process.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<pre>Starting to apply commands...  Applying : no ip pim isolate Applying : router bgp 65502 Applying : no isolate Applying : router ospf p1 Applying : no isolate Applying : router ospfv3 p1 Applying : no isolate  Maintenance mode operation successful.  Generating Current Snapshot</pre>	
<b>Step 3</b>	<p>(Optional) <b>show system mode</b></p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>switch(config)# show system mode System Mode: Normal</pre>	Displays the current system mode. The switch is now in normal mode and is fully operational.

## Maintenance Mode Enhancements

The following maintenance mode enhancements are added to Cisco Nexus 3600 platform switches:

- In the system maintenance shutdown mode, the following message is added:

```
NOTE: The command system interface shutdown will shutdown all interfaces excluding mgmt 0.
```

- Entering the CLI command, **system mode maintenance** checks and sends alerts for the orphan ports.
- In isolate mode, when the vPC is configured, the following message is added:

```
NOTE: If you have vPC orphan interfaces, please ensure vpc orphan-port suspend is configured under them, before proceeding further.
```

- Custom Profile Configuration: A new CLI command, **system mode maintenance always-use-custom-profile** is added for custom profile configuration. A new CLI command, **system mode maintenance non-interactive** is added under `#ifdef` for Cisco Nexus 9000 Series switches only.

When you create a custom profile (in maintenance or normal mode), it displays the following message:

```
Please use the command system mode maintenance always-use-custom-profile if you want to always use the custom profile.
```

- A delay has been added before the `after_maintenance` snapshot is taken. The **no system mode maintenance** command exits once all the configuration for the normal mode has been applied, the mode has been changed to normal mode, and a timer has been started to take the `after_maintenance` snapshot. Once the timer expires, the `after_maintenance` snapshot is taken in the background and a new warning syslog, `MODE_SNAPSHOT_DONE` is sent once the snapshot is complete.

The final output of the CLI command **no system mode maintenance** indicates when the `after_maintenance` snapshot is generated:

```
The after_maintenance snapshot will be generated in <delay> seconds.
After that time, please use show snapshots compare before_maintenance
after_maintenance to check the health of the system. The timer delay
```

for the `after_maintenance` snapshot is defaulted to 120 seconds but it can be changed by a new configuration command.

The new configuration command to change the timer delay for the `after_maintenance` snapshot is **system mode maintenance snapshot-delay <seconds>**. This configuration overrides the default setting of 120 seconds to any value between 0 and 65535 and it is displayed in the ASCII configuration.

A new show command, **show maintenance snapshot-delay** has also been added to display the current snapshot-delay value. This new show command supports the XML output.

- A visible CLI indicator has been added to display when the system is in the maintenance mode, for example, `switch (m-mode) #`.
- Support for the SNMP traps has been added when the device moves from the maintenance mode to the normal mode and vice-versa through CLI reload, or system reset. The **snmp-server enable traps mmode cseMaintModeChangeNotify** trap is added to enable changing to the maintenance mode trap notification. The **snmp-server enable traps mmode cseNormalModeChangeNotify** is added to enable changing to the normal mode trap notification. Both the traps are disabled by default.

## Verifying the GIR Configuration

To display the GIR configuration, perform one of the following tasks:

Command	Purpose
<b>show interface brief</b>	Displays abbreviated interface information.
<b>show maintenance on-reload reset-reasons</b>	Displays the reset reasons for which the switch comes up in maintenance mode. For a description of the maintenance mode reset reasons, see <a href="#">Triggering Graceful Removal, on page 209</a> .
<b>show maintenance profile</b> [ <b>maintenance-mode</b>   <b>normal-mode</b> ]	Displays the details of the maintenance-mode or normal-mode profile.
<b>show maintenance timeout</b>	Displays the maintenance-mode timeout period, after which the switch automatically returns to normal mode.
<b>show</b> { <b>running-config</b>   <b>startup-config</b> } <b>mmode</b> [ <b>all</b> ]	Displays the maintenance-mode section of the running or startup configuration. The <b>all</b> option includes the default values.
<b>show snapshots</b>	Displays snapshots present on the switch.
<b>show snapshots compare</b> <i>snapshot-name-1</i> <i>snapshot-name-2</i> [ <b>summary</b>   <b>ipv4routes</b>   <b>ipv6routes</b> ]	<p>Displays a comparison of two snapshots.</p> <p>The <b>summary</b> option displays just enough information to see the overall changes between the two snapshots.</p> <p>The <b>ipv4routes</b> and <b>ipv6routes</b> options display the changes in IPv4 and IPv6 routes between the two snapshots.</p>

Command	Purpose
<b>show snapshots dump</b> <i>snapshot-name</i>	Displays the content of each file that was generated when the snapshot was taken.
<b>show snapshots sections</b>	Displays the user-specified snapshot sections.
<b>show system mode</b>	Displays the current system mode.







## CHAPTER 19

# Configuring Rollback

---

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [About Rollbacks, on page 217](#)
- [Guidelines and Limitations for Rollbacks, on page 217](#)
- [Creating a Checkpoint, on page 218](#)
- [Implementing a Rollback, on page 219](#)
- [Verifying the Rollback Configuration, on page 220](#)

## About Rollbacks

The rollback feature allows you to take a snapshot, or user checkpoint, of the Cisco NX-OS configuration and then reapply that configuration to your switch at any point without having to reload the switch. A rollback allows any authorized administrator to apply this checkpoint configuration without requiring expert knowledge of the features configured in the checkpoint.

You can create a checkpoint copy of the current running configuration at any time. Cisco NX-OS saves this checkpoint as an ASCII file which you can use to roll back the running configuration to the checkpoint configuration at a future time. You can create multiple checkpoints to save different versions of your running configuration.

When you roll back the running configuration, you can trigger an atomic rollback. An atomic rollback implements a rollback only if no errors occur.

## Guidelines and Limitations for Rollbacks

A rollback has the following configuration guidelines and limitations:

- You can create up to ten checkpoint copies.
- You cannot apply the checkpoint file of one switch into another switch.
- Your checkpoint file names must be 75 characters or less.
- You cannot start a checkpoint filename with the word system.
- You can start a checkpoint filename with the word auto.
- You can name a checkpoint file summary or any abbreviation of the word summary.

- Only one user can perform a checkpoint, rollback, or copy the running configuration to the startup configuration at the same time.
- After you enter the **write erase** and **reload** command, checkpoints are deleted. You can use the clear checkpoint database command to clear out all checkpoint files.
- When checkpoints are created on bootflash, differences with the running-system configuration cannot be performed before performing the rollback, and the system reports “No Changes.”
- Checkpoints are local to a switch.
- Checkpoints that are created using the **checkpoint** and **checkpoint** *checkpoint\_name* commands are present upon a switchover for all switches.
- A rollback to files on bootflash is supported only on files that are created using the **checkpoint** *checkpoint\_name* command and not on any other type of ASCII file.
- Checkpoint names must be unique. You cannot overwrite previously saved checkpoints with the same name.
- The Cisco NX-OS commands may differ from the Cisco IOS commands.

## Creating a Checkpoint

You can create up to ten checkpoints of your configuration per switch.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **checkpoint** { [*cp-name*] [**description** *descr*] |**file** *file-name*}
2. (Optional) switch# **no checkpoint***cp-name*
3. (Optional) switch# **show checkpoint***cp-name*

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>checkpoint</b> { [ <i>cp-name</i> ] [ <b>description</b> <i>descr</i> ]   <b>file</b> <i>file-name</i> }  <b>Example:</b> switch# checkpoint stable	Creates a checkpoint of the running configuration to either a user checkpoint name or a file. The checkpoint name can be any alphanumeric string up to 80 characters but cannot contain spaces. If you do not provide a name, Cisco NX-OS sets the checkpoint name to user-checkpoint- <i>&lt;number&gt;</i> where number is from 1 to 10.  The description can contain up to 80 alphanumeric characters, including spaces.
<b>Step 2</b>	(Optional) switch# <b>no checkpoint</b> <i>cp-name</i>  <b>Example:</b> switch# no checkpoint stable	You can use the <b>no</b> form of the <b>checkpoint</b> command to remove a checkpoint name.  Use the <b>delete</b> command to remove a checkpoint file.
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) switch# <b>show checkpoint</b> <i>cp-name</i>  <b>Example:</b>	Displays the contents of the checkpoint name.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	[ all] switch# show checkpoint stable	

## Implementing a Rollback

You can implement a rollback to a checkpoint name or file. Before you implement a rollback, you can view the differences between source and destination checkpoints that reference current or saved configurations.



**Note** If you make a configuration change during an atomic rollback, the rollback will fail.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **show diff rollback-patch** {**checkpoint** *src-cp-name* | **running-config** | **startup-config** | **file** *source-file*} {**checkpoint** *dest-cp-name* | **running-config** | **startup-config** | **file** *dest-file*}
2. **rollback running-config** {**checkpoint** *cp-name* | **file** *cp-file*} **atomic**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>show diff rollback-patch</b> { <b>checkpoint</b> <i>src-cp-name</i>   <b>running-config</b>   <b>startup-config</b>   <b>file</b> <i>source-file</i> } { <b>checkpoint</b> <i>dest-cp-name</i>   <b>running-config</b>   <b>startup-config</b>   <b>file</b> <i>dest-file</i> }  <b>Example:</b> switch# show diff rollback-patch checkpoint stable  running-config	Displays the differences between the source and destination checkpoint selections.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>rollback running-config</b> { <b>checkpoint</b> <i>cp-name</i>   <b>file</b> <i>cp-file</i> } <b>atomic</b>  <b>Example:</b> switch# rollback running-config checkpoint stable	Creates an atomic rollback to the specified checkpoint name or file if no errors occur.

### Example

The following example shows how to create a checkpoint file and then implement an atomic rollback to a user checkpoint name:

```
switch# checkpoint stable
switch# rollback running-config checkpoint stable atomic
```

## Verifying the Rollback Configuration

Use the following commands to verify the rollback configuration:

Command	Purpose
<b>show checkpoint</b> <i>name</i> [ <b>all</b> ]	Displays the contents of the checkpoint name.
<b>show checkpoint all</b> [ <b>user</b>   <b>system</b> ]	Displays the contents of all checkpoints in the current switch. You can limit the displayed checkpoints to user or system-generated checkpoints.
<b>show checkpoint summary</b> [ <b>user</b>   <b>system</b> ]	Displays a list of all checkpoints in the current switch. You can limit the displayed checkpoints to user or system-generated checkpoints.
<b>show diff rollback-patch</b> { <b>checkpoint</b> <i>src-cp-name</i>   <b>running-config</b>   <b>startup-config</b>   <b>file</b> <i>source-file</i> } { <b>checkpoint</b> <i>dest-cp-name</i>   <b>running-config</b>   <b>startup-config</b>   <b>file</b> <i>dest-file</i> }	Displays the differences between the source and destination checkpoint selections.
<b>show rollback log</b> [ <b>exec</b>   <b>verify</b> ]	Displays the contents of the rollback log.




---

**Note** Use the **clear checkpoint database** command to delete all checkpoint files.

---



## CHAPTER 20

# Configuring User Accounts and RBAC

---

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [About User Accounts and RBAC, on page 221](#)
- [Guidelines and Limitations for User Accounts, on page 224](#)
- [Configuring User Accounts, on page 225](#)
- [Configuring RBAC, on page 226](#)
- [Verifying the User Accounts and RBAC Configuration, on page 230](#)
- [Default Settings for the User Accounts and RBAC, on page 230](#)

## About User Accounts and RBAC

Cisco Nexus 3600 platform switches use role-based access control (RBAC) to define the amount of access that each user has when the user logs into the switch.

With RBAC, you define one or more user roles and then specify which management operations each user role is allowed to perform. When you create a user account for the switch, you associate that account with a user role, which then determines what the individual user is allowed to do on the switch.

## User Roles

User roles contain rules that define the operations allowed for the user who is assigned the role. Each user role can contain multiple rules and each user can have multiple roles. For example, if role1 allows access only to configuration operations, and role2 allows access only to debug operations, users who belong to both role1 and role2 can access configuration and debug operations. You can also limit access to specific VLANs, and interfaces.

The switch provides the following default user roles:

### **network-admin (superuser)**

Complete read and write access to the entire switch.

### **network-operator**

Complete read access to the switch.



**Note** If you belong to multiple roles, you can execute a combination of all the commands permitted by these roles. Access to a command takes priority over being denied access to a command. For example, suppose a user has RoleA, which denied access to the configuration commands. However, the user also has RoleB, which has access to the configuration commands. In this case, the user has access to the configuration commands.

## Rules

The rule is the basic element of a role. A rule defines what operations the role allows the user to perform. You can apply rules for the following parameters:

### Command

A command or group of commands defined in a regular expression.

### Feature

Commands that apply to a function provided by the Cisco Nexus device. Enter the **show role feature** command to display the feature names available for this parameter.

### Feature group

Default or user-defined group of features. Enter the **show role feature-group** command to display the default feature groups available for this parameter.

These parameters create a hierarchical relationship. The most basic control parameter is the command. The next control parameter is the feature, which represents all commands associated with the feature. The last control parameter is the feature group. The feature group combines related features and allows you to easily manage the rules.

You can configure up to 256 rules for each role. The user-specified rule number determines the order in which the rules are applied. Rules are applied in descending order. For example, if a role has three rules, rule 3 is applied before rule 2, which is applied before rule 1.

## User Role Policies

You can define user role policies to limit the switch resources that the user can access, or to limit access to interfaces and VLANs.

User role policies are constrained by the rules defined for the role. For example, if you define an interface policy to permit access to specific interfaces, the user does not have access to the interfaces unless you configure a command rule for the role to permit the **interface** command.

If a command rule permits access to specific resources (interfaces, VLANs), the user is permitted to access these resources, even if the user is not listed in the user role policies associated with that user.

## User Account Configuration Restrictions

The following words are reserved and cannot be used to configure users:

- adm
- bin

- daemon
- ftp
- ftpuser
- games
- gdm
- gopher
- halt
- lp
- mail
- mailnull
- man
- mtsuser
- news
- nobody
- san-admin
- shutdown
- sync
- sys
- uucp
- xfs

**Caution**

The Cisco Nexus 3600 platform switch does not support all numeric usernames, even if those usernames were created in TACACS+ or RADIUS. If an all numeric username exists on an AAA server and is entered during login, the switch rejects the login request.

## User Password Requirements

Cisco Nexus device passwords are case sensitive and can contain alphanumeric characters.

**Note**

Special characters, such as the dollar sign (\$) or the percent sign (%), can be used in Cisco Nexus device passwords.

If a password is trivial (such as a short, easy-to-decipher password), the Cisco Nexus device rejects the password. Be sure to configure a strong password for each user account. A strong password has the following characteristics:

- At least eight characters long
- Does not contain many consecutive characters (such as "abcd")
- Does not contain many repeating characters (such as "aaabbb")
- Does not contain dictionary words
- Does not contain proper names
- Contains both uppercase and lowercase characters
- Contains numbers

The following are examples of strong passwords:

- If2CoM18
- 2009AsdfLkj30
- Cb1955S21



---

**Note** For security reasons, user passwords do not display in the configuration files.

---

## Guidelines and Limitations for User Accounts

User accounts have the following guidelines and limitations when configuring user accounts and RBAC:

- Regardless of the read-write rule configured for a user role, some commands can be executed only through the predefined network-admin role.
- Up to 256 rules can be added to a user role.
- A maximum of 64 user roles can be assigned to a user account.
- You can assign a user role to more than one user account.
- Predefined roles such as network-admin and network-operator are not editable.



---

**Note** A user account must have at least one user role.

---



# Configuring User Accounts



**Note** Changes to user account attributes do not take effect until the user logs in and creates a new session.

You can use any alphanumeric character (or) an \_ (underscore) as the first character in a username. Using any other special characters for the first character is not allowed. If the username contains the characters that are not allowed, the specified user is unable to log in.

## SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. (Optional) switch(config)# **show role**
3. switch(config) # **username** *user-id* [**password** *password*] [**expire** *date*] [**role** *role-name*]
4. switch(config) # **exit**
5. (Optional) switch# **show user-account**
6. (Optional) switch# **copy running-config startup-config**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>show role</b>	Displays the user roles available. You can configure other user roles, if necessary.
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config) # <b>username</b> <i>user-id</i> [ <b>password</b> <i>password</i> ] [ <b>expire</b> <i>date</i> ] [ <b>role</b> <i>role-name</i> ]	<p>Configures a user account.</p> <p>The <i>user-id</i> is a case-sensitive, alphanumeric character string with a maximum of 28 characters.</p> <p>The default <i>password</i> is undefined.</p> <p><b>Note</b> If you do not specify a password, the user might not be able to log into the switch.</p> <p><b>Note</b> Starting with Release 7.0(3)F3(1), a new internal function is implemented to check the password strength.</p> <p>The <b>expire</b> <i>date</i> option format is YYYY-MM-DD. The default is no expiry date.</p>
<b>Step 4</b>	switch(config) # <b>exit</b>	Exists global configuration mode.
<b>Step 5</b>	(Optional) switch# <b>show user-account</b>	Displays the role configuration.
<b>Step 6</b>	(Optional) switch# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

The following example shows how to configure a user account:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# username NewUser password 4Ty18Rnt
switch(config)# exit
switch# show user-account
```

The following example shows the criteria in enabling the password strength-check starting with Release 7.0(3)F3(1):

```
switch(config)# username xyz password nbv12345
password is weak
Password should contain characters from at least three of the following classes: lower case
letters, upper case letters, digits and special characters.
switch(config)# username xyz password Nbv12345
password is weak
it is too simplistic/systematic
switch(config)#
```

# Configuring RBAC

## Creating User Roles and Rules

The rule number that you specify determines the order in which the rules are applied. Rules are applied in descending order. For example, if a role has three rules, rule 3 is applied before rule 2, which is applied before rule 1.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config) # **role name** *role-name*
3. switch(config-role) # **rule number** {deny | permit} **command** *command-string*
4. switch(config-role)# **rule number** {deny | permit} {read | read-write}
5. switch(config-role)# **rule number** {deny | permit} {read | read-write} **feature** *feature-name*
6. switch(config-role)# **rule number** {deny | permit} {read | read-write} **feature-group** *group-name*
7. (Optional) switch(config-role)# **description** *text*
8. switch(config-role)# **end**
9. (Optional) switch# **show role**
10. (Optional) switch# **copy running-config startup-config**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config) # <b>role name</b> <i>role-name</i>	Specifies a user role and enters role configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		The <i>role-name</i> argument is a case-sensitive, alphanumeric character string with a maximum of 16 characters.
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config-role) # <b>rule</b> <i>number</i> {deny   permit} <b>command</b> <i>command-string</i>	Configures a command rule.  The <i>command-string</i> can contain spaces and regular expressions. For example, interface ethernet * includes all Ethernet interfaces.  Repeat this command for as many rules as needed.
<b>Step 4</b>	switch(config-role)# <b>rule</b> <i>number</i> {deny   permit} {read   read-write}	Configures a read-only or read-and-write rule for all operations.
<b>Step 5</b>	switch(config-role)# <b>rule</b> <i>number</i> {deny   permit} {read   read-write} <b>feature</b> <i>feature-name</i>	Configures a read-only or read-and-write rule for a feature.  Use the <b>show role feature</b> command to display a list of features.  Repeat this command for as many rules as needed.
<b>Step 6</b>	switch(config-role)# <b>rule</b> <i>number</i> {deny   permit} {read   read-write} <b>feature-group</b> <i>group-name</i>	Configures a read-only or read-and-write rule for a feature group.  Use the <b>show role feature-group</b> command to display a list of feature groups.  Repeat this command for as many rules as needed.
<b>Step 7</b>	(Optional) switch(config-role)# <b>description</b> <i>text</i>	Configures the role description. You can include spaces in the description.
<b>Step 8</b>	switch(config-role)# <b>end</b>	Exits role configuration mode.
<b>Step 9</b>	(Optional) switch# <b>show role</b>	Displays the user role configuration.
<b>Step 10</b>	(Optional) switch# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

This example shows how to create user roles and specify rules:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# role name UserA
switch(config-role)# rule deny command clear users
switch(config-role)# rule deny read-write
switch(config-role)# description This role does not allow users to use clear commands
switch(config-role)# end
switch(config)# show role
```

## Creating Feature Groups

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config) # **role feature-group** *group-name*
3. switch(config) # **exit**
4. (Optional) switch# **show role feature-group**
5. (Optional) switch# **copy running-config startup-config**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config) # <b>role feature-group</b> <i>group-name</i>	Specifies a user role feature group and enters role feature group configuration mode.  The <i>group-name</i> is a case-sensitive, alphanumeric character string with a maximum of 32 characters.
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config) # <b>exit</b>	Exits global configuration mode.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) switch# <b>show role feature-group</b>	Displays the role feature group configuration.
<b>Step 5</b>	(Optional) switch# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

This example shows how to create a feature group:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config) # role feature-group group1
switch(config) # exit
switch# show role feature-group
switch# copy running-config startup-config
switch#
```

## Changing User Role Interface Policies

You can change a user role interface policy to limit the interfaces that the user can access. Specify a list of interfaces that the role can access. You can specify it for as many interfaces as needed.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config) # **role name** *role-name*
3. switch(config-role) # **interface policy deny**

4. switch(config-role-interface) # **permit interface** *interface-list*
5. switch(config-role-interface) # **exit**
6. (Optional) switch(config-role) # **show role**
7. (Optional) switch(config-role) # **copy running-config startup-config**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config) # <b>role name</b> <i>role-name</i>	Specifies a user role and enters role configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config-role) # <b>interface policy deny</b>	Enters role interface policy configuration mode.
<b>Step 4</b>	switch(config-role-interface) # <b>permit interface</b> <i>interface-list</i>	Specifies a list of interfaces that the role can access. Repeat this command for as many interfaces as needed. For this command, you can specify Ethernet interfaces.
<b>Step 5</b>	switch(config-role-interface) # <b>exit</b>	Exits role interface policy configuration mode.
<b>Step 6</b>	(Optional) switch(config-role) # <b>show role</b>	Displays the role configuration.
<b>Step 7</b>	(Optional) switch(config-role) # <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

The following example shows how to change a user role interface policy to limit the interfaces that the user can access:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# role name UserB
switch(config-role)# interface policy deny
switch(config-role-interface)# permit interface ethernet 2/1
switch(config-role-interface)# permit interface fc 3/1
switch(config-role-interface)# permit interface vfc 30/1
```

## Changing User Role VLAN Policies

You can change a user role VLAN policy to limit the VLANs that the user can access.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config) # **role name** *role-name*
3. switch(config-role) # **vlan policy deny**
4. switch(config-role-vlan) # **permit vlan** *vlan-list*
5. switch(config-role-vlan) # **exit**
6. (Optional) switch# **show role**

## 7. (Optional) switch# copy running-config startup-config

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config) # <b>role name</b> <i>role-name</i>	Specifies a user role and enters role configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config-role) # <b>vlan policy deny</b>	Enters role VLAN policy configuration mode.
<b>Step 4</b>	switch(config-role-vlan) # <b>permit vlan</b> <i>vlan-list</i>	Specifies a range of VLANs that the role can access. Repeat this command for as many VLANs as needed.
<b>Step 5</b>	switch(config-role-vlan) # <b>exit</b>	Exits role VLAN policy configuration mode.
<b>Step 6</b>	(Optional) switch# <b>show role</b>	Displays the role configuration.
<b>Step 7</b>	(Optional) switch# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

## Verifying the User Accounts and RBAC Configuration

Use one of the following commands to verify the configuration:

Command	Purpose
<b>show role</b> [ <i>role-name</i> ]	Displays the user role configuration
<b>show role feature</b>	Displays the feature list.
<b>show role feature-group</b>	Displays the feature group configuration.
<b>show startup-config security</b>	Displays the user account configuration in the startup configuration.
<b>show running-config security</b> [ <b>all</b> ]	Displays the user account configuration in the running configuration. The <b>all</b> keyword displays the default values for the user accounts.
<b>show user-account</b>	Displays user account information.

## Default Settings for the User Accounts and RBAC

The following table lists the default settings for user accounts and RBAC parameters.

*Table 18: Default User Accounts and RBAC Parameters*

<b>Parameters</b>	<b>Default</b>
User account password	Undefined.
User account expiry date	None.
Interface policy	All interfaces are accessible.
VLAN policy	All VLANs are accessible.







## INDEX

### A

- action statements [111](#)
  - EEM [111](#)
- action statements, configuring [118](#)
  - EEM [118](#)
- activating sessions [157](#)
  - SPAN [157](#)
- additional references [142](#)
  - EEM [142](#)
- agent address [196](#)
  - sFlow [196](#)
- analyzer address [195](#)
  - sFlow [195](#)
- analyzer port [195](#)
  - sFlow [195](#)

### C

- clear logging onboard [148](#)
- committing [56](#)
  - NTP configuration changes [56](#)
- configuration example [180, 198](#)
  - ERSPAN [180](#)
    - source [180](#)
  - sFlow [198](#)
- configuration examples [58, 159](#)
  - for SPAN [159](#)
  - NTP [58](#)
- configuration sync after reboot [24](#)
  - switch profiles [24](#)
- configuration, verifying [74](#)
  - scheduler [74](#)
- configure maintenance profile maintenance-mode [204](#)
- configure maintenance profile normal-mode [205](#)
- configuring [45–47, 49–51, 54](#)
  - device as an authoritative NTP server [45](#)
    - NTP authentication [47, 49](#)
    - NTP logging [54](#)
    - NTP server and peer [46](#)
    - NTP source interface [51](#)
    - NTP source IP address [50](#)
- counter poll interval [193](#)
  - sFlow [193](#)

- creating, deleting sessions [152](#)
  - SPAN [152](#)

### D

- datagram size [194](#)
  - sFlow [194](#)
- default parameters [167](#)
  - ERSPAN [167](#)
- default settings [44, 64, 66, 113, 190](#)
  - EEM [113](#)
  - rollback [64](#)
  - scheduler [66](#)
  - sFlow [190](#)
- default SNMP settings [81](#)
- defining EEM policies [120](#)
  - VSH script [120](#)
- description, configuring [156](#)
  - SPAN [156](#)
- destination ports, characteristics [150](#)
  - SPAN [150](#)
- destinations [150](#)
  - SPAN [150](#)
- diagnostics [105–106, 108](#)
  - configuring [106](#)
  - default settings [108](#)
  - expansion modules [106](#)
  - health monitoring [106](#)
  - runtime [105](#)
- disabling [73](#)
  - scheduler [73](#)
- discarding [56](#)
  - NTP configuration changes [56](#)
- displaying information [158](#)
  - SPAN [158](#)
- downgrading software [151](#)
  - loss of SPAN configurations [151](#)

### E

- EEE [112](#)
  - guidelines and limitations [112](#)
- EEM [109–115, 118, 120–121, 123, 142](#)
  - action statements [111](#)

EEM (*continued*)

- action statements, configuring [118](#)
  - additional references [142](#)
  - default settings [113](#)
  - defining environment variables [113](#)
  - event statements [110](#)
  - event statements, configuring [115](#)
  - licensing [112](#)
  - policies [109](#)
  - prerequisites [112](#)
  - syslog script [123](#)
  - system policies, overriding [121](#)
  - user policy, defining [114](#)
  - VSH script [120](#)
    - registering and activating [120](#)
  - VSH script policies [112](#)
- embedded event manager [109](#)
- overview [109](#)
- enabling [55, 67](#)
- CFS distribution for NTP [55](#)
  - scheduler [67](#)
- environment variables, defining [113](#)
- EEM [113](#)
- ERSPAN [163–164, 167, 180, 182](#)
- configuring source sessions [167](#)
  - default parameters [167](#)
  - high availability [164](#)
  - information about [163](#)
  - prerequisites [164](#)
  - related documents [182](#)
  - sessions [164](#)
    - multiple [164](#)
  - source [180](#)
    - configuration example [180](#)
  - source sessions [167](#)
    - configuring for ERSPAN [167](#)
  - sources [163](#)
- Ethernet destination port, configuring [152](#)
- SPAN [152](#)
- event statements [110](#)
- EEM [110](#)
- event statements, configuring [115](#)
- EEM [115](#)
- example [74–75](#)
- job schedule, displaying [75](#)
  - scheduler job, creating [74](#)
  - scheduler job, scheduling [74](#)
  - scheduler jobs, displaying results [75](#)
- example, local and peer sync [30](#)
- switch profiles [30](#)
- executing a session [63](#)

## F

- feature groups, creating [228](#)
  - RBAC [228](#)

- filtering SNMP requests [84](#)

## G

- GOLD diagnostics [105–106](#)
  - configuring [106](#)
  - expansion modules [106](#)
  - health monitoring [106](#)
  - runtime [105](#)
- guidelines [190](#)
  - sFlow [190](#)
- guidelines and limitations [10, 66, 81, 112, 151, 224](#)
  - EEM [112](#)
  - scheduler [66](#)
  - SNMP [81](#)
  - SPAN [151](#)
  - switch profiles [10](#)
  - user accounts [224](#)
- guidelines and limitations for configuration rollback [217](#)

## H

- health monitoring diagnostics [106](#)
  - information [106](#)
- high availability [35](#)
  - PTP [35](#)
    - high availability [35](#)
- hw-module logging onboard [145](#)
- hw-module logging onboard counter-stats [145](#)
- hw-module logging onboard cpuhog [145](#)
- hw-module logging onboard environmental-history [145](#)
- hw-module logging onboard error-stats [146](#)
- hw-module logging onboard interrupt-stats [146](#)
- hw-module logging onboard module [146](#)
- hw-module logging onboard obfl-logs [146](#)

## I

- information [41](#)
  - ntp [41](#)
- information about [42, 65](#)
  - clock manager [42](#)
  - distributing NTP using CFS [42](#)
  - NTP as time server [42](#)
  - scheduler [65](#)
- interfaces, configuring [38](#)
  - PTP [38](#)
- isolate [202](#)

## J

- job schedule, displaying [75](#)
  - example [75](#)
- job, deleting [70](#)
  - scheduler [70](#)

**L**

- licensing [112](#)
  - EEM [112](#)
- linkDown notifications [91](#)
- linkUp notifications [91](#)
- log file size, defining [67](#)
  - scheduler [67](#)
- log file, clearing [73](#)
  - scheduler [73](#)
- log files [66](#)
  - scheduler [66](#)

**M**

- message encryption [83](#)
  - SNMP [83](#)

**N**

- no isolate [202](#)
- no shutdown [202](#)
- no system interface shutdown [202](#)
- no system mode maintenance [212](#)
- no system mode maintenance dont-generate-profile [212](#)
- no system mode maintenance on-reload reset-reason [210](#)
- notification receivers [85](#)
  - SNMP [85](#)
- NTO on an interface, Enabling and disabling [44](#)
- ntp [41–42](#)
  - information [41](#)
  - virtualization [42](#)
- NTP Broadcast Server, Configuring [52](#)
- NTP multicast client, Configuring [54](#)
- NTP multicast server, Configuring [53](#)

**O**

- overview [109](#)
  - embedded event manager [109](#)

**P**

- password requirements [223](#)
- policies [109](#)
  - EEM [109](#)
- prerequisites [43, 112, 164, 190](#)
  - EEM [112](#)
  - ERSPAN [164](#)
  - NTP [43](#)
  - sFlow [190](#)
- PTP [33–36, 38](#)
  - configuring globally [36](#)
  - default settings [35](#)
  - device types [33](#)

PTP (*continued*)

- interface, configuring [38](#)
- overview [33](#)
- process [34](#)
- python instance [203](#)

**R**

- rate limit, configuring [154](#)
  - SPAN [154](#)
- RBAC [221–222, 225–226, 228–230](#)
  - feature groups, creating [228](#)
  - rules [222](#)
  - user account restrictions [222](#)
  - user accounts, configuring [225](#)
  - user role interface policies, changing [228](#)
  - user role VLAN policies, changing [229](#)
  - user roles [221](#)
  - user roles and rules, configuring [226](#)
  - verifying [230](#)
- related documents [182](#)
  - ERSPAN [182](#)
- releasing [57](#)
  - CSF session lock [57](#)
- remote user authentication [66](#)
  - scheduler [66](#)
- remote user authentication, configuring [68–69](#)
  - scheduler [68–69](#)
- requirements [223](#)
  - user passwords [223](#)
- roles [221](#)
  - authentication [221](#)
- rollback [61, 64](#)
  - checkpoint copy [61](#)
  - creating a checkpoint copy [61](#)
  - default settings [64](#)
  - deleting a checkpoint file [61](#)
  - description [61](#)
  - example configuration [61](#)
  - guidelines [61](#)
  - high availability [61](#)
  - implementing a rollback [61](#)
  - limitations [61](#)
  - reverting to checkpoint file [61](#)
  - verifying configuration [64](#)
- rules [222](#)
  - RBAC [222](#)
- running config, displaying [28](#)
  - switch profiles [28](#)
- runtime diagnostics [105](#)
  - information [105](#)

## S

- sampling data source [197](#)
  - sFlow [197](#)
- sampling rate [191](#)
  - sFlow [191](#)
- scheduler [65–71, 73–75](#)
  - configuration, verifying [74](#)
  - default settings [66](#)
  - disabling [73](#)
  - enabling [67](#)
  - guidelines and limitations [66](#)
  - information about [65](#)
  - job, deleting [70](#)
  - log file size, defining [67](#)
  - log file, clearing [73](#)
  - log files [66](#)
  - remote user authentication [66](#)
  - remote user authentication, configuring [68–69](#)
  - standards [75](#)
  - timetable, defining [71](#)
- scheduler job, creating [74](#)
  - example [74](#)
- scheduler job, scheduling [74](#)
  - example [74](#)
- scheduler jobs, displaying results [75](#)
  - example [75](#)
- session manager [61, 63–64](#)
  - committing a session [63](#)
  - configuring an ACL session (example) [63](#)
  - description [61](#)
  - discarding a session [63](#)
  - guidelines [61](#)
  - limitations [61](#)
  - saving a session [63](#)
  - verifying configuration [64](#)
  - verifying the session [63](#)
- sFlow [189–191, 193–198](#)
  - agent address [196](#)
  - analyzer address [195](#)
  - analyzer port [195](#)
  - configuration example [198](#)
  - counter poll interval [193](#)
  - datagram size [194](#)
  - default settings [190](#)
  - guidelines [190](#)
  - prerequisites [190](#)
  - sampling data source [197](#)
  - sampling rate [191](#)
  - show commands [198](#)
- show commands [198](#)
  - sFlow [198](#)
- show interface brief [214](#)
- show logging onboard [146](#)
- show logging onboard boot-up-time [147](#)
- show logging onboard counter-stats [147](#)
- show logging onboard credit-loss [147](#)
- show logging onboard device-version [147](#)
- show logging onboard endtime [147](#)
- show logging onboard environmental-history [147](#)
- show logging onboard error-stats [147](#)
- show logging onboard exception-log [147](#)
- show logging onboard interrupt-stats [147](#)
- show logging onboard module [147](#)
- show logging onboard obfl-history [147](#)
- show logging onboard obfl-logs [147](#)
- show logging onboard stack-trace [147](#)
- show logging onboard starttime [147](#)
- show logging onboard status [147](#)
- show maintenance on-reload reset-reasons [214](#)
- show maintenance profile [214](#)
- show maintenance profile maintenance-mode [204, 214](#)
- show maintenance profile normal-mode [205, 214](#)
- show maintenance timeout [214](#)
- show running-config mmode [214](#)
- show snapshots [207, 214](#)
- show snapshots compare [207, 214](#)
- show snapshots dump [215](#)
- show snapshots sections [215](#)
- show startup-config mmode [214](#)
- show system mode [211, 213, 215](#)
- shutdown [202](#)
- sleep instance [202](#)
- snapshot create [206](#)
- snapshot delete [206](#)
- SNMP [77–85, 87, 93–94](#)
  - access groups [81](#)
  - configuring local engineID [93](#)
  - configuring users [82](#)
  - default settings [81](#)
  - disabling [94](#)
  - filtering requests [84](#)
  - functional overview [77](#)
  - group-based access [81](#)
  - guidelines and limitations [81](#)
  - inband access [87](#)
  - message encryption [83](#)
  - notification receivers [85](#)
  - security model [79](#)
  - trap notifications [78](#)
  - user synchronization with CLI [80](#)
  - user-based security [79](#)
    - SNMP [79](#)
    - version 3 security features [78](#)
- SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol) [78](#)
  - versions [78](#)
- SNMP notification receivers [86](#)
  - configuring with VRFs [86](#)
- SNMP notifications [87](#)
  - filtering based on a VRF [87](#)
- SNMPv3 [78, 84](#)
  - assigning multiple roles [84](#)

- SNMPv3 (*continued*)
    - security features 78
  - software 151
    - downgrading 151
      - loss of SPAN configurations 151
  - source ports, characteristics 150
    - SPAN 150
  - source ports, configuring 153
    - SPAN 153
  - SPAN 149–159
    - activating sessions 157
    - characteristics, source ports 150
    - configuration examples 159
    - configuration loss when downgrading software 151
    - creating, deleting sessions 152
    - description, configuring 156
    - destination ports, characteristics 150
    - destinations 150
    - displaying information 158
    - egress sources 149
    - Ethernet destination port, configuring 152
    - guidelines and limitations 151
    - ingress sources 149
    - rate limit, configuring 154
    - source port channels, configuring 155
    - source ports, configuring 153
    - sources for monitoring 149
    - VLANs, configuring 155
  - SPAN sources 149
    - egress 149
    - ingress 149
  - standards 75
    - scheduler 75
  - switch profile buffer, displaying 23, 30
  - switch profiles 10, 23–24, 28–30
    - buffer, displaying 23, 30
    - configuration sync after reboot 24
    - example, local and peer sync 28, 30
    - guidelines and limitations 10
    - running config, displaying 28
    - verify and commit, displaying 29
  - Switched Port Analyzer 149
  - syslog 123
    - EEM 123
  - system interface shutdown 202
  - system mode maintenance dont-generate-profile 210
  - system mode maintenance on-reload reset-reason 210
  - system mode maintenance shutdown 210
  - system mode maintenance timeout 210
  - system policies, overriding 121
    - EEM 121
- ## T
- timetable, defining 71
    - scheduler 71
  - trap notifications 78
- ## U
- user account restrictions 222
    - RBAC 222
  - user accounts 223–224, 230
    - guidelines and limitations 224
    - passwords 223
    - verifying 230
  - user policies, defining 114
    - EEM 114
  - user role interface policies, changing 228
    - RBAC 228
  - user role VLAN policies, changing 229
    - RBAC 229
  - user roles 221
    - RBAC 221
  - user roles and rules, creating 226
    - RBAC 226
  - users 221
    - description 221
- ## V
- verifying 57, 230
    - NTP configuration 57
    - RBAC 230
    - user accounts 230
  - virtualization 42
    - ntp 42
  - VRFs 86–87
    - configuring SNMP notification receivers with 86
    - filtering SNMP notifications 87
  - VSH script 120
    - defining EEM policies 120
  - VSH script policies 112, 120
    - EEM 112
    - registering and activating 120

